

DESCRIPTION

TRICYCLIC COMPOUND AND PHARMACEUTICAL USE THEREOF

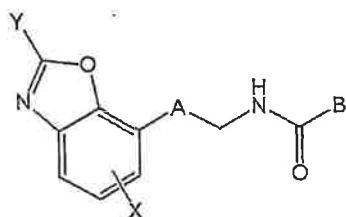
Technical Field

The present invention relates to a tricyclic compound
5 having superior affinity for melatonin receptor, and useful as
an agent for the prophylaxis or treatment of a disease related
to the action of melatonin..

Background of the Invention

Melatonin (N-acetyl-5-methoxytryptamine), which is a
10 hormone synthesized and secreted principally in the pineal
gland, increases in dark environments and decreases in light
environments. Melatonin acts suppressively on pigment cells and
the female gonads, and acts as a synchronous factor of
biological clock while taking part in transmittance of
15 photoperiodic code. Therefore, melatonin is expected to be
usable for the treatment of diseases related to melatonin
activity, such as reproductive and endocrinic disorders, sleep-
awake rhythm disorders, jet-lag syndrome, various disorders
related to aging and the like. It has been clarified that the
20 production amount of melatonin decreases with aging and there is
a report documenting that retention of the production amount of
melatonin could prevent aging itself [Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci.,
Vol. 719, pp. 456-460, (1994)]. However, since melatonin is
easily metabolized by metabolic enzymes in vivo [Clinical
25 Examinations, Vol. 38, No. 11, pp. 282-284 (1994)]. Therefore,
melatonin is not entirely suitable as a drug.

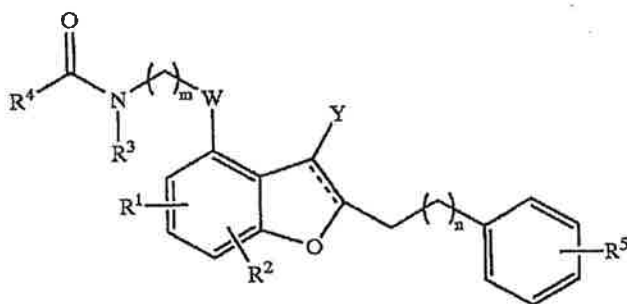
US2003/0216456 discloses a compound represented by the
formula:



30 wherein A is C₁₋₄ alkylene or 1,2 disubstituted cyclopropyl; B is
C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, or C₁₋₄ alkylamino; X is

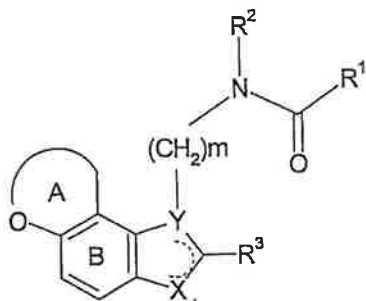
hydrogen, halogen, C₂₋₄ alkenyl, C₁₋₆ alkyl, furyl, or phenyl optionally substituted with halogen, C₁₋₆ alkoxy or haloalkyl; and Y is hydrogen, phenyl, or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally substituted with phenyl, which has an affinity for melatonin receptor and is useful as a therapeutic agent for circadian rhythm-related disorders. Moreover, a compound similar to the above-mentioned compound is also disclosed in Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett. Vol. 14, pp. 1197-1200 (2004) and Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett. Vol. 14, pp. 3799-3802 (2004).

US Patent No. 6,569,894 discloses a compound of the formula:



wherein the dashed line represents a single or double bond; R¹ and R² are each independently hydrogen or halogen; R³ is hydrogen or C₁₋₄ alkyl; R⁴ is C₁₋₄ alkyl, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, C₁₋₃ haloalkyl, C₂₋₆ alkenyl, C₁₋₄ alkoxy, C₁₋₂ trifluoromethylalkyl or C₁₋₄ alkylamino; R⁵ is hydrogen, halogen, C₁₋₄ alkyl or C₁₋₄ alkoxy; Y is hydrogen or halogen; W is ethylene or 1,2 disubstituted cyclopropyl group; m is 1 or 2; and n is 1 to 9, which has an affinity for melatonin receptor and is useful as a therapeutic agent for circadian rhythm-related disorders.

US Patent No. 6,034,239 discloses a compound represented by the formula:



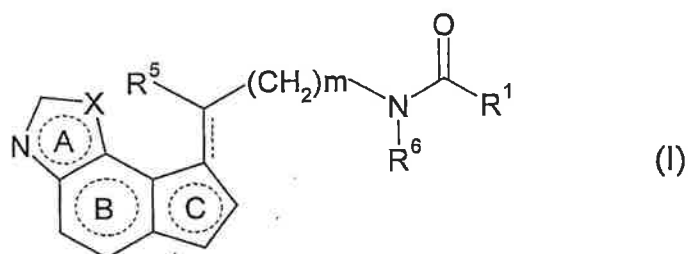
wherein R^1 represents an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group, an optionally substituted amino group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group; R^2 represents a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group; R^3 represents a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group or an optionally substituted heterocyclic group; X represents CHR^4 , NR^4 , O or S wherein R^4 represents a hydrogen atom or an optionally substituted hydrocarbon group; Y represents C, CH or N, provided that when X is CH_2 , Y is C or CH; --- represents a single bond or a double bond; ring A represents an optionally substituted 5- to 7-membered oxygen-containing heterocyclic ring; ring B represents an optionally substituted benzene ring; and m represents an integer of 1 to 4, or a salt thereof, which has an affinity for melatonin receptor and is useful as a therapeutic agent for sleep disorder.

Disclosure of the Invention

Melatonin agonists having different structures from that of melatonin, and having superior affinity for melatonin receptor, superior intracerebral mobility and superior metabolic stability are expected to be more effective for the treatment of sleep disorder and the like than melatonin. While the above-mentioned compounds and the like have been reported as melatonin agonists, the development of a novel compound, which is different from the above-mentioned known compounds in the chemical structure, has superior agonistic activity for melatonin receptor, and is useful as a pharmaceutical product, is desired.

The present inventors have conducted various studies and first succeeded in the production of a novel compound represented by the following formula (I) and a salt thereof. They have further found that the compound and a salt thereof
 5 unexpectedly have superior properties as melatonin agonists and are useful as pharmaceutical agents and, based on these findings, completed the present invention.

Accordingly, the present invention relates to
 (1) a compound represented by the formula:



10

wherein

R^1 is a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), amino optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a substituent or a heterocyclic group optionally having
 15 substituent(s);

R^5 is a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), amino optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a substituent or mercapto optionally having a substituent;

20 R^6 is a hydrogen atom or a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s);

X is an oxygen atom or a sulfur atom;

m is 0, 1 or 2;

ring A is a 5-membered ring optionally having substituent(s);

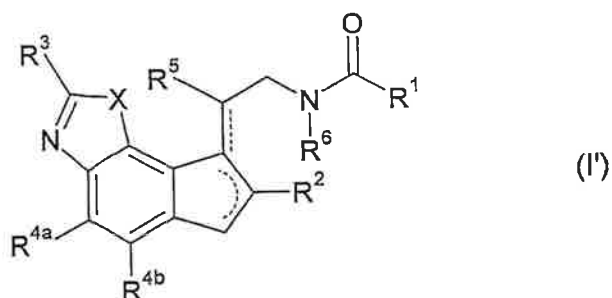
25 ring B is a 6-membered ring optionally having substituent(s);

ring C is a 5-membered ring optionally having substituent(s);

and

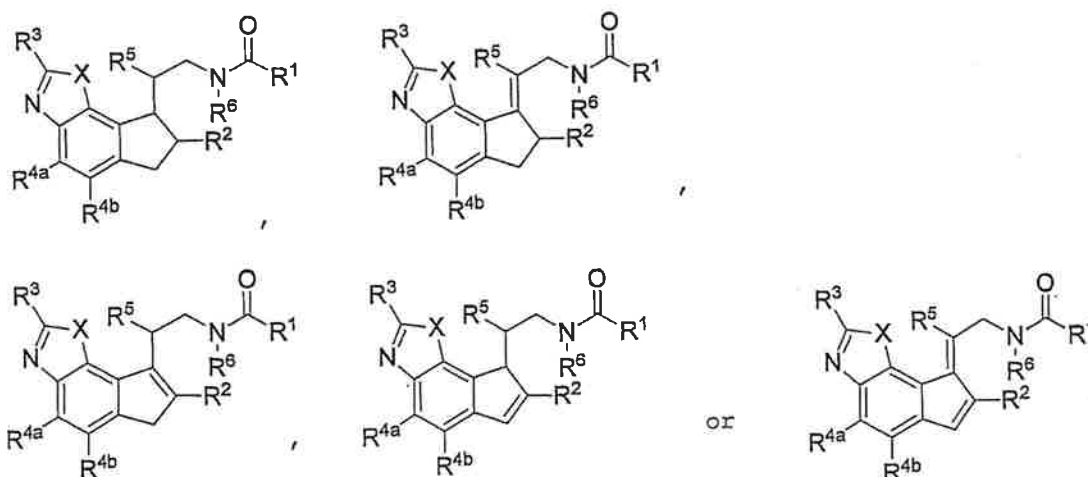
----- shows a single bond or a double bond, or a salt thereof
 [hereinafter sometimes to be abbreviated as compound (I)];

(2) the compound of the aforementioned (1), which is represented by the formula:



wherein

- 5 R^2 is a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s) or a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s);
- R^3 is a hydrogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), amino optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a substituent, mercapto optionally having a substituent or a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s);
- 10 R^{4a} and R^{4b} are the same or different and each is a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), amino optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a substituent or mercapto optionally having a substituent;
- and other symbols are as defined in the aforementioned (1);
- (3) the compound of the aforementioned (1) or (2), which is
- 20 represented by the formula:



- wherein R^2 , R^3 , R^{4a} and R^{4b} are as defined in the aforementioned (2), and other symbols are as defined in the aforementioned (1);
- (4) the compound of the aforementioned (1) or (2), wherein R^1 is C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s), C_{3-6} cycloalkyl
- 5 optionally having substituent(s) or C_{2-6} alkenyl optionally having substituent(s);
- (5) the compound of the aforementioned (1) or (2), wherein R^5 is a hydrogen atom or C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s);
- (6) the compound of the aforementioned (1) or (2), wherein R^6 is
- 10 a hydrogen atom or C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s);
- (7) the compound of the aforementioned (1), wherein m is 1;
- (8) the compound of the aforementioned (1), wherein ring A is a 5-membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a halogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having
- 15 substituent(s), amino optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a substituent and mercapto optionally having a substituent;
- (9) the compound of the aforementioned (1), wherein ring B is a 6-membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected
- 20 from a halogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), amino optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a substituent, mercapto optionally having a substituent and a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s);
- 25 (10) the compound of the aforementioned (1), wherein ring C is a 5-membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a halogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a substituent and a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s);
- 30 (11) the compound of the aforementioned (2), wherein R^2 is a hydrogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s) or a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s);

(12) the compound of the aforementioned (2), wherein R^3 is a hydrogen atom, C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s), C_{2-6} alkenyl optionally having substituent(s) or amino optionally having substituent(s);

5 (13) the compound of the aforementioned (2), wherein R^{4a} and R^{4b} are the same or different and each is a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, hydroxy optionally having a substituent or C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s);

10 (14) the compound of the aforementioned (2), wherein R^1 is C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s), C_{3-6} cycloalkyl optionally having substituent(s) or C_{2-6} alkenyl optionally having substituent(s);

R^2 is a hydrogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s) or a heterocyclic group optionally having

15 substituent(s);

R^3 is a hydrogen atom, C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s), C_{2-6} alkenyl optionally having substituent(s) or amino optionally having substituent(s);

20 R^{4a} and R^{4b} are the same or different and each is a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, hydroxy optionally having a substituent or C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s);

R^5 is a hydrogen atom or C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s); and

25 R^6 is a hydrogen atom or C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s);

(15) the compound of the aforementioned (2), wherein R^1 is C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s);

R^2 is a hydrogen atom;

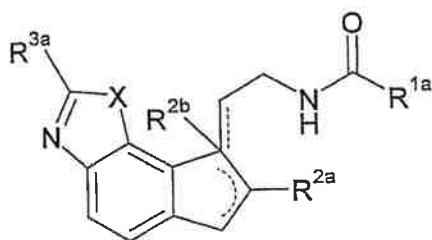
30 R^3 is a hydrogen atom or C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s);

R^{4a} and R^{4b} are the same or different and each is a hydrogen atom or a halogen atom;

R^5 is a hydrogen atom or C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s); and

R⁶ is a hydrogen atom;

(16) the compound of the aforementioned (1), which is represented by the formula:



5

wherein

R^{1a} is (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy, hydroxy and a halogen atom, (b) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, (c) phenyl or (d) mono- or di-C₁₋₆

10 alkylamino;

R^{2a} is a hydrogen atom or C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R^{2b} is a hydrogen atom or hydroxy;

R^{3a} is (a) a hydrogen atom, (b) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from phenyl, hydroxy, a halogen atom, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₇₋₁₃ aralkyloxy and pyridyl, (c) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, (d) phenyl, (e) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (f) mercapto, (g) C₁₋₆ alkylthio or (h) mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino;

(17) N-[2-(2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide,

20 N-[2-(2-methyl-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

N-[2-(2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]propionamide,

N-{2-[2-(4-phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene]ethyl}acetamide,

25 N-[2-(2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide,

N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

(R)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

30

(S)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide,

5 (R)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide,

(S)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide,

N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-

10 yl)ethyl]acetamide,

(R)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

(S)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

15 N-[2-(2-ethyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

(R)-N-[2-(2-ethyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

(S)-N-[2-(2-ethyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-

20 yl)ethyl]acetamide,

N-[2-(2-methoxy-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

(R)-N-[2-(2-methoxy-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

25 (S)-N-[2-(2-methoxy-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide, or a salt thereof;

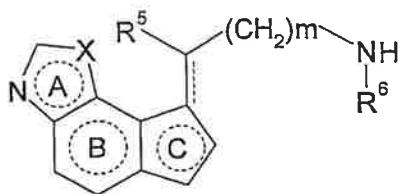
(18) a prodrug of the compound of the aforementioned (1);

(19) a pharmaceutical composition comprising the compound of the aforementioned (1) or a prodrug thereof;

30 (20) the pharmaceutical composition of the aforementioned (19), which is a melatonin receptor agonist;

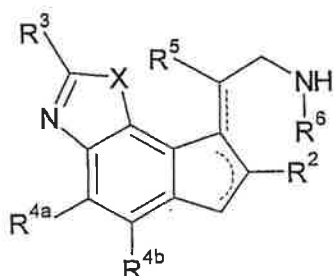
(21) the pharmaceutical composition of the aforementioned (19), which is an agent for the prophylaxis or treatment of sleep disorder;

(22) a compound represented by the formula:



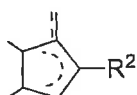
wherein each symbol is as defined in the aforementioned (1), or a salt thereof;

5 (23) the compound of the aforementioned (22), which is represented by the formula:

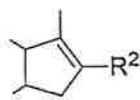
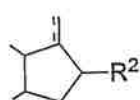


wherein R^2 , R^3 , R^{4a} and R^{4b} are as defined in the aforementioned (2), and other symbols are as defined in the aforementioned (1);
10 and the like.

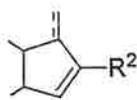
In the aforementioned formulas, the ring represented by



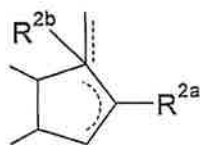
means



or

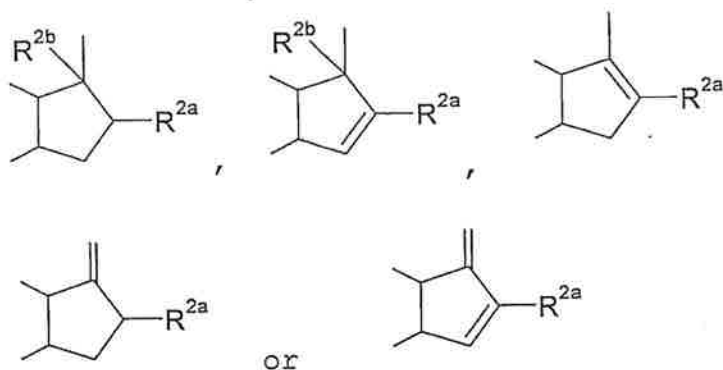


In the aforementioned formulas, the ring represented by



means

15



Since compound (I) of the present invention shows superior affinity for melatonin receptors, superior pharmacokinetics (e.g., metabolic stability) and the like, a clinically useful agent for the prophylaxis or treatment of diseases related to the action of melatonin in the living body can be provided.

As the "halogen atom" used in the present specification, fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine can be mentioned.

The term "optionally halogenated" used in the present specification means being optionally substituted by 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, halogen atoms.

As the "hydrocarbon group" of the term "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" used in the present specification, for example, aliphatic hydrocarbon group, monocyclic saturated hydrocarbon group and aromatic hydrocarbon group and the like can be mentioned, with preference given to those having 1 to 16 carbon atoms. Specifically, for example, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, aryl and the like are used.

The "alkyl" is preferably, for example, lower alkyl or the like, and, for example, C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl etc., and the like are widely used.

The "alkenyl" is preferably, for example, lower alkenyl or the like, and, for example, C₂₋₆ alkenyl such as vinyl, 1-propenyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl etc., and the like are widely used.

The "alkynyl" is preferably, for example, lower alkynyl or the like, and, for example, C₂₋₆ alkynyl such as ethynyl, propargyl, 1-propynyl etc., and the like are widely used.

The "cycloalkyl" is preferably, for example, lower cycloalkyl or the like, and, for example, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl, and the like are widely used.

The "aryl" is preferably, for example, C₆₋₁₄ aryl such as phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, biphenyl, 2-anthryl etc., or the like, more preferably C₆₋₁₀ aryl, and, for example, phenyl and the like are widely used.

As the substituent which the "hydrocarbon group" of the "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" may have, for example,

- (1) halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine),
- (2) nitro,
- (3) cyano,
- (4) lower alkyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for example, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl, chloromethyl, difluoromethyl, trichloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, ethyl, 2-bromoethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, pentafluoroethyl, propyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, 4,4,4-trifluorobutyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, 5,5,5-trifluoropentyl, hexyl, 6,6,6-trifluorohexyl etc., and the like),
- (5) aryl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ aryl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen

atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for example, C₆₋₁₀ aryl such as phenyl, naphthyl etc., and the like),
(6) hydroxy,

(7) alkylenedioxy (e.g., C₁₋₃ alkylenedioxy such as methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy etc., and the like),
(8) lower alkoxy optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkoxy optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for example, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, isobutoxy, pentyloxy, hexyloxy, trifluoromethoxy etc., and the like),

(9) aryloxy optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for example, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy such as phenyloxy, naphthyloxy etc., and the like),

(10) lower alkanoyloxy optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., formyloxy; C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano,

hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for example, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy such as acetyloxy, propionyloxy, butyryloxy, isobutyryloxy etc., and the like),

(11) arylcarbonyloxy optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbonyloxy optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for example, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbonyloxy such as benzoyloxy, naphthoyloxy etc., and the like),

(12) carboxy,

(13) lower alkanoyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like or formyl; for example, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl such as acetyl, propionyl etc., and the like),

(14) arylcarbonyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbonyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-

carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for example, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbonyl such as benzoyl, naphthoyl etc., and the like),

- 5 (15) lower alkoxy-carbonyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, 10 carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for example, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl such as methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl etc., and the like),
- 15 (16) aralkyloxy-carbonyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., C₇₋₁₂ aralkyloxy-carbonyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl- 20 carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for example, C₇₋₁₂ aralkyloxy-carbonyl such as benzyloxycarbonyl etc., and the like),
- 25 (17) carbamoyl,
- (18) mono-lower alkylcarbamoyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ 30 alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for

example, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl such as methylcarbamoyl, ethylcarbamoyl etc., and the like),

(19) di-lower alkylcarbamoyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl optionally having 1 to 5

5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, 10 optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for example, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl such as dimethylcarbamoyl, diethylcarbamoyl etc., and the like),

(20) arylcarbamoyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected 15 from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ 20 aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for example, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl such as phenylcarbamoyl, naphthylcarbamoyl etc., and the like),

(21) amino,

(22) mono-lower alkylamino optionally having substituent(s) 25 (e.g., mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ 30 aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for example, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino such as methylamino, ethylamino etc., and the like),

(23) di-lower alkylamino optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected

from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for example, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino such as dimethylamino, diethylamino etc., and the like),

(24) 3- to 6-membered cyclic amino optionally containing, besides a carbon atom and one nitrogen atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, which optionally has substituent(s) (e.g., 3- to 6-membered cyclic amino optionally containing, besides a carbon atom and one nitrogen atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino, oxo and the like; for example, aziridinyl, azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl, pyrrolinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolidinyl, piperidyl, morpholinyl, dihydropyridyl, tetrahydropyridyl, piperazinyl, N-methylpiperazinyl, N-ethylpiperazinyl and the like),

(25) lower alkylcarbonylamino optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and the like; for

example, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino such as acetylamino, trifluoroacetylamino etc., and the like),

(26) oxo,

(27) heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s) (e.g.,

5 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group optionally containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl,

10 optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino, oxo and the

15 like; for example, thienyl, furyl, pyrrolyl, pyrrolidinyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, pyrazolyl, pyrazolidinyl, imidazolyl, imidazolinyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, pyridyl, pyrimidinyl, thiomorpholinyl, morpholinyl, piperidino, piperidyl, thiopyranyl, oxazinyl, thiazinyl, piperazinyl,

20 triazinyl, pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl and the like; preferably pyridyl and the like),

(28) mercapto,

(29) lower alkylthio (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkylthio such as methylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, sec-butylthio,

25 tert-butylthio etc., and the like),

(30) arylthio (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ arylthio such as phenylthio, naphthylthio etc., and the like),

(31) lower alkylsulfinyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkylsulfinyl such as methylsulfinyl, ethylsulfinyl, propylsulfinyl, butylsulfinyl

30 etc., and the like),

(32) arylsulfinyl (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ arylsulfinyl such as phenylsulfinyl, naphthylsulfinyl etc., and the like),

(33) lower alkylsulfonyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl such as methylsulfonyl, ethylsulfonyl, propylsulfonyl, butylsulfonyl etc., and the like),

(34) arylsulfonyl (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ arylsulfonyl such as phenylsulfonyl, naphthylsulfonyl etc., and the like)

(35) sulfamoyl,

(36) mono-lower alkylsulfamoyl (e.g., mono-C₁₋₆ alkylsulfamoyl such as N-methylsulfamoyl, N-ethylsulfamoyl, N-propylsulfamoyl, N-isopropylsulfamoyl, N-butylsulfamoyl etc., and the like),

(37) di-lower alkylsulfamoyl (e.g., di-C₁₋₆ alkylsulfamoyl such as N,N-dimethylsulfamoyl, N,N-diethylsulfamoyl, N,N-dipropylsulfamoyl, N,N-dibutylsulfamoyl etc., and the like) and the like are used.

The "hydrocarbon group" of the "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" may have 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents selected from the aforementioned substituents (1) - (37) [hereinafter the group consisting of these (1) - (37) is sometimes to be abbreviated as "substituent group A"] at substitutable position(s) of the hydrocarbon group. When the number of substituents is two or more, each substituent may be the same or different.

As the substituent which the "hydrocarbon group" optionally has, preferably, 1 to 5 (preferably 1 to 3) substituents selected from (1) halogen atom, (2) nitro, (3) cyano, (4) hydroxy, (5) optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (7) C₇₋₁₃ aralkyloxy, (8) amino, (9) mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, (10) di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, (11) carboxy, (12) C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, (13) C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, (14) carbamoyl, (15) mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, (16) di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, (17) C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, (18) C₆₋₁₀ aryl (e.g., phenyl), (19) C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, (20) C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino, (21) C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy, (22) heterocyclic group (e.g., pyridyl and the like) and the like can be mentioned.

As the "heterocyclic group" of the term "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)" used in the present specification, for example, a 5- to 14-membered (preferably 5- to 10-membered) (monocyclic, bicyclic or tricyclic, preferably 5 monocyclic or bicyclic) heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 4 (preferably 1 to 3) hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, can be mentioned. For example, a 5-membered ring group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 4 hetero atoms 10 selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, such as 2- or 3-thienyl, 2- or 3-furyl, 1-, 2- or 3-pyrrolyl, 1-, 2- or 3-pyrrolidinyl, 2-, 4- or 5-oxazolyl, 3-, 4- or 5-isoxazolyl, 2-, 4- or 5-thiazolyl, 3-, 4- or 5-isothiazolyl, 3-, 4- or 5-pyrazolyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyrazolidinyl, 2-, 4- or 5- 15 imidazolyl, 2- or 4-imidazolinyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl, 1H- or 2H-tetrazolyl and the like; for example, a 6-membered ring group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, such as 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, N-oxido-2-, 3- or 4- 20 pyridyl, 2-, 4- or 5-pyrimidinyl, N-oxido-2-, 4- or 5-pyrimidinyl, thiomorpholinyl, morpholinyl, piperidino, 2-, 3- or 4-piperidyl, thiopyranyl, 1,4-oxazinyl, 1,4-thiazinyl, 1,3-thiazinyl, 1- or 2-piperazinyl, triazinyl, 3- or 4-pyridazinyl, pyrazinyl, N-oxido-3- or 4-pyridazinyl and the like; for 25 example, a bicyclic or tricyclic fused ring group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom (preferably, a group formed by condensation of the aforementioned 5- or 6-membered ring with one or two 5- or 6-membered ring group(s) 30 optionally containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom), such as indolyl, benzofuryl, benzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, benzimidazolyl, quinolyl, isoquinolyl, phthalazinyl, quinazolinyl, quinoxalinyl,

indoliziny, quinoliziny, 1,8-naphthyridiny, dibenzofurany, carbazoly, acridiny, phenanthridiny, chromany, phenothiaziny, phenoxaziny and the like; and the like are used. Of these, a 5- to 7-membered (preferably 5- or 6-
5 membered) heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom is preferable.

As the substituent that the "heterocyclic group" of the "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)" may have,
10 (i) the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)", (ii) the groups recited as examples of the substituents that the "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" may have, and the like can be mentioned.

Particularly preferably, for example,

- 15 (1) halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine),
- (2) optionally halogenated lower alkyl (e.g., optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl, chloromethyl, difluoromethyl, trichloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, ethyl, 2-bromoethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, pentafluoroethyl, propyl,
20 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, 4,4,4-trifluorobutyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, 5,5,5-trifluoropentyl, hexyl, 6,6,6-trifluorohexyl etc., and the like),
- (3) cycloalkyl (e.g., C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, and the like),
25 (4) lower alkynyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkynyl such as ethynyl, 1-propynyl, propargyl etc., and the like),
- (5) lower alkenyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkenyl such as vinyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl etc., and the like),
30 (6) aralkyl (e.g., C₇₋₁₂ aralkyl such as benzyl, α -methylbenzyl, phenethyl etc., and the like),
- (7) aryl (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ aryl such as phenyl, naphthyl etc., and the like, preferably phenyl),

- (8) lower alkoxy (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, isobutoxy, sec-butoxy, tert-butoxy etc., and the like),
- (9) aryloxy (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy such as phenoxy etc., and the like),
- (10) lower alkanoyl (e.g., formyl; C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl such as acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, isobutyryl etc., and the like),
- (11) arylcarbonyl (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbonyl such as benzoyl, naphthoyl etc., and the like),
- (12) lower alkanoyloxy (e.g., formyloxy; C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy such as acetyloxy, propionyloxy, butyryloxy, isobutyryloxy etc., and the like),
- (13) arylcarbonyloxy (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbonyloxy such as benzoyloxy, naphthoyloxy etc., and the like),
- (14) carboxy,
- (15) lower alkoxycarbonyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl such as methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, isopropoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, isobutoxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl etc., and the like),
- (16) aralkyloxycarbonyl (e.g., C₇₋₁₂ aralkyloxy-carbonyl such as benzyloxycarbonyl etc., and the like),
- (17) carbamoyl,
- (18) oxo,
- (19) amidino,
- (20) imino,
- (21) amino,
- (22) mono-lower alkylamino (e.g., mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino such as methylamino, ethylamino, propylamino, isopropylamino, butylamino etc., and the like),
- (23) di-lower alkylamino (e.g., di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino such as dimethylamino, diethylamino, dipropylamino, diisopropylamino, dibutylamino, N-ethyl-N-methylamino etc., and the like),
- (24) 3- to 6-membered cyclic amino optionally containing, besides a carbon atom and one nitrogen atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms

selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, which optionally has substituent(s) (e.g., 3- to 6-membered cyclic amino optionally containing, besides a carbon atom and one nitrogen atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino, oxo and the like; for example, aziridinyl, azetidiny, pyrrolidinyl, pyrrolinyl, pyrrolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, imidazolidinyl, piperidyl, morpholinyl, dihydropyridyl, tetrahydropyridyl, piperazinyl, N-methylpiperazinyl, N-ethylpiperazinyl and the like),

(25) alkylenedioxy (e.g., C₁₋₃ alkylenedioxy such as methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy etc., and the like),

(26) hydroxy,

(27) nitro,

(28) cyano,

(29) mercapto,

(30) sulfo,

(31) sulfino,

(32) phosphono,

(33) sulfamoyl,

(34) mono-lower alkylsulfamoyl (e.g., mono-C₁₋₆ alkylsulfamoyl such as N-methylsulfamoyl, N-ethylsulfamoyl, N-propylsulfamoyl, N-isopropylsulfamoyl, N-butylsulfamoyl etc., and the like),

(35) di-lower alkylsulfamoyl (e.g., di-C₁₋₆ alkylsulfamoyl such as N,N-dimethylsulfamoyl, N,N-diethylsulfamoyl, N,N-dipropylsulfamoyl, N,N-dibutylsulfamoyl etc., and the like),

(36) lower alkylthio (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkylthio such as methylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, sec-butylthio, tert-butylthio etc., and the like),

(37) arylthio (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ arylthio such as phenylthio, naphthylthio etc., and the like),

(38) lower alkylsulfinyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkylsulfinyl such as methylsulfinyl, ethylsulfinyl, propylsulfinyl, butylsulfinyl etc., and the like),

(39) arylsulfinyl (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ arylsulfinyl such as phenylsulfinyl, naphthylsulfinyl etc., and the like),

(40) lower alkylsulfonyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl such as methylsulfonyl, ethylsulfonyl, propylsulfonyl, butylsulfonyl etc., and the like),

(41) arylsulfonyl (e.g., C₆₋₁₀ arylsulfonyl such as phenylsulfonyl, naphthylsulfonyl etc., and the like) and the like are used.

The "heterocyclic group" of the "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)" may have 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents selected from the aforementioned substituents (1) - (41) [hereinafter the group consisting of these (1) - (41) is sometimes to be abbreviated as "substituent group B"], at substitutable position(s) of the heterocyclic group. When the number of the substituents is two or more, each substituent may be the same or different.

The term used in the present specification "amino optionally having substituent(s)" means amino optionally having, as substituent, 1 or 2, the same or different groups selected from, for example, (i) the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)", (ii) the groups recited as examples of the substituent that the "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" may have and the like. Preferable examples of the substituent that the "amino" may have include C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₀ aryl optionally having substituent(s) and the like. As the

substituent that the "C₁₋₆ alkyl" and "C₆₋₁₀ aryl" may have, those similar to the substituents that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have are used.

The term used in the present specification "hydroxy optionally having a substituent" means (1) hydroxy or (2) hydroxy having, instead of the hydrogen atom of hydroxy, one group selected from, for example, (i) the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)", (ii) the groups recited as examples of the substituent that the "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" may have and the like. As the "hydroxy optionally having a substituent", for example, hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy optionally having substituent(s), C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy optionally having substituent(s) and the like can be mentioned. Preferred are hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy optionally having substituent(s) and the like. As the substituent that the "C₁₋₆ alkoxy", "C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy", "C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy", "C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy" and "C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy" may have, those similar to the substituents that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have are used.

The term used in the present specification "mercapto(thiol) optionally having a substituent" means (1) mercapto or (2) mercapto having, instead of the hydrogen atom of mercapto, one group selected from, for example, (i) the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)", (ii) the groups recited as examples of the substituent that the "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" may have and the like. As the "mercapto optionally having a substituent", for example, mercapto, C₁₋₆ alkylthio optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkenylthio optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkynylthio optionally having substituent(s), C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio optionally having substituent(s),

substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ arylthio optionally having substituent(s) and the like can be mentioned. Preferred are mercapto, C₁₋₆ alkylthio optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ arylthio optionally having substituent(s) and the like. As the
5 substituent that the "C₁₋₆ alkylthio", "C₂₋₆ alkenylthio", "C₂₋₆ alkynylthio", "C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio" and "C₆₋₁₄ arylthio" may have, those similar to the substituents that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have are used.

As the "lower alkyl" of the term used in the present
10 specification "lower alkyl optionally having substituent(s)", for example, C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl etc., and the like can be mentioned. The "lower alkyl" may have, as the substituent, for example, 1 to 3 substituents that the aforementioned
15 "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

As the "optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl" used in the present specification, for example, C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 (preferably 1 to 3) halogen atoms such as methyl, chloromethyl, difluoromethyl, trichloromethyl, trifluoromethyl,
20 ethyl, 2-bromoethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, pentafluoroethyl, propyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, 4,4,4-trifluorobutyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, 5,5,5-trifluoropentyl, hexyl, 6,6,6-trifluorohexyl and the like can be mentioned.

25 As the "optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy" used in the present specification, for example, C₁₋₆ alkoxy optionally having 1 to 5 (preferably 1 to 3) halogen atoms such as methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, isobutoxy, pentyloxy, hexyloxy, trifluoromethoxy and the like can be mentioned.

30 As the "optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino" used in the present specification, for example, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino optionally having 1 to 5 (preferably 1 to 3) halogen atoms such as acetylamino, trifluoroacetylamino and the like can be mentioned.

As the "C₇₋₁₃ aralkyloxy" used in the present specification, for example, benzyloxy, phenethyloxy and the like can be mentioned.

In the aforementioned formulas, R¹ is a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), amino optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a substituent or a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s).

Preferable examples of the "hydrocarbon group" of the "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" for R¹ include alkyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl etc., and the like), alkenyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkenyl such as vinyl etc., and the like), alkynyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkynyl such as ethynyl etc., and the like), cycloalkyl (e.g., C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, and the like), aryl (e.g., C₆₋₁₄ aryl such as phenyl etc., and the like) and the like. More preferable examples include alkyl, (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl, ethyl etc., and the like), alkenyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkenyl such as vinyl etc., and the like), cycloalkyl (e.g., C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl etc., and the like), phenyl and the like. The "alkyl", "alkenyl", "alkynyl", "cycloalkyl" and "aryl" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom such as chlorine, fluorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc.; hydroxy; C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy such as acetyloxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

As the substituent of the "amino optionally having substituent(s)" for R¹, preferably, for example, 1 or 2 substituents selected from lower alkyl optionally having substituent(s), aryl optionally having substituent(s) and the like are used, and particularly, one lower alkyl optionally having substituent(s) is used. As the "lower alkyl", for example, C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl etc., and the like are

used. The "lower alkyl" may have, for example, 1 to 3 substituents that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like. As the "aryl", for example, C₆₋₁₀ aryl such as phenyl etc., and the like are used. The "aryl" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom such as fluorine, chlorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like. As the "amino optionally having substituent(s)", for example, C₆₋₁₀ arylamino (e.g., phenylamino and the like) optionally having 1 to 3 C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy and the like), or mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino (e.g., methylamino, ethylamino, propylamino, isopropylamino, butylamino, tert-butylamino, dimethylamino, diethylamino, N-ethyl-N-methylamino and the like) and the like are widely used.

Preferable examples of the "hydroxy optionally having a substituent" for R¹ include hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy (e.g., vinyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy (e.g., ethynyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy (e.g., cyclopropyloxy, cyclobutyloxy, cyclopentyloxy, cyclohexyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy (e.g., phenoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. More preferable examples include C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy (e.g., vinyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy (e.g., cyclopropyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. The "C₁₋₆ alkoxy", "C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy", "C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy", "C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy" and "C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom such as chlorine, fluorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the

like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

Preferable examples of the "heterocyclic group" of the "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)" for R¹ include a 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, and the like. Specifically, for example, 1-, 2- or 3-pyrrolidinyl, 2- or 4-imidazoliny, 2-, 3- or 4-pyrazolidinyl, piperidino, 2-, 3- or 4-piperidyl, 1- or 2-piperazinyl, morpholinyl, 2- or 3-thienyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2- or 3-furyl, pyrazinyl, 2-pyrimidinyl, 3-pyrrolyl, 3-pyridazinyl, 3-isothiazolyl, 3-isoxazolyl and the like can be mentioned. Particularly preferably, a 6-membered nitrogen-containing heterocyclic group (e.g., pyridyl and the like) and the like can be used. Preferable examples of the substituent of the "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)" for R¹ include a halogen atom (e.g., chlorine, fluorine and the like), C₁₋₆ alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl and the like), C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy and the like), C₇₋₁₂ aralkyloxy-carbonyl (e.g., benzyloxycarbonyl and the like) and the like.

R¹ is preferably for example, (i) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s), (ii) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl optionally having substituent(s), (iii) C₂₋₆ alkenyl optionally having substituent(s) or the like. Particularly, C₁₋₆ alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl) optionally having substituent(s) is more preferable. These groups optionally have, as the substituent, for example, 1 to 5 substituents that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have and the like.

R¹ is preferably (i) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s), (ii) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, (iii) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, (iv) amino optionally having substituent(s) or the like. More preferably, R¹ is (i) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 3 substituents

selected from C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy, hydroxy, a halogen atom and the like, (ii) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, (iii) phenyl, (iv) mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino or the like.

In the aforementioned formulas, R⁵ is a hydrogen atom, a
5 halogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having
substituent(s), amino optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy
optionally having a substituent or mercapto optionally having a
substituent.

The "halogen atom" for R⁵ is preferably fluorine, chlorine
10 or bromine.

Preferable examples of the "hydrocarbon group" of the
"hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" for R⁵
include alkyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl,
isopropyl etc., and the like), alkenyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkenyl such
15 as vinyl etc., and the like), alkynyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkynyl such as
ethynyl etc., and the like), cycloalkyl (e.g., C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl
such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, and
the like), aryl (e.g., C₆₋₁₄ aryl such as phenyl etc., and the
like) and the like. Particularly preferably, alkyl (e.g., C₁₋₆
20 alkyl such as methyl etc., and the like), alkenyl (e.g., C₂₋₆
alkenyl such as vinyl etc., and the like) and the like can be
mentioned. The "alkyl", "alkenyl", "alkynyl", "cycloalkyl" and
"aryl" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3,
substituents that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may
25 have, and the like.

Preferable examples of the substituent of the "amino
optionally having substituent(s)" for R⁵ include 1 or 2
substituents selected from lower alkyl optionally having
substituent(s), aryl optionally having substituent(s) and the
30 like. More preferably, for example, one lower alkyl optionally
having substituent(s) is used. As the "lower alkyl", for
example, C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl,
butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl etc., and the like are
used. The "lower alkyl" may have, for example, 1 to 3

substituents that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like. As the "aryl", for example, C₆₋₁₀ aryl such as phenyl etc., and the like are used. The "aryl" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, 5 halogen atom such as fluorine, chlorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like. As the "amino optionally having substituent(s)", for example, C₆₋₁₀ arylamino (e.g., phenylamino and the like) optionally having 1 to 3 C₁₋₆ 10 alkoxy (e.g., methoxy and the like), mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino (e.g., methylamino, ethylamino, propylamino, isopropylamino, butylamino, tert-butylamino, dimethylamino, diethylamino, N-ethyl-N-methylamino and the like) and the like are widely used.

Preferable examples of the "hydroxy optionally having a 15 substituent" for R⁵ include hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy (e.g., vinyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy (e.g., ethynyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₃₋₆ 20 cycloalkyloxy (e.g., cyclopropyloxy, cyclobutyloxy, cyclopentyloxy, cyclohexyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy (e.g., phenoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. More preferable examples include hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy and the 25 like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy (e.g., phenoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. The "C₁₋₆ alkoxy", "C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy", "C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy", "C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy" and "C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom 30 such as chlorine, fluorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

Preferable examples of the "mercapto optionally having a substituent" for R⁵ include mercapto, C₁₋₆ alkylthio (e.g.,

methythio, ethythio, propythio, isopropythio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkenythio (e.g., vinylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkynythio (e.g., ethynythio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₃₋₆ cycloalkythio (e.g., cyclopropythio, cyclobutythio, cyclopentythio, cyclohexythio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ arylthio (e.g., phenylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. More preferable examples include mercapto, C₁₋₆ alkylthio (e.g., methylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ arylthio (e.g., phenylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. The "C₁₋₆ alkylthio", "C₂₋₆ alkenythio", "C₂₋₆ alkynythio", "C₃₋₆ cycloalkythio" and "C₆₋₁₄ arylthio" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom such as chlorine, fluorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

R⁵ is preferably a hydrogen atom, C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s) or the like. More preferably, it is a hydrogen atom, C₁₋₆ alkyl or the like, particularly preferably a hydrogen atom.

In the aforementioned formulas, R⁶ is a hydrogen atom or a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s).

Preferable examples of the "hydrocarbon group" of the "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" for R⁶ include alkyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl etc., and the like), alkenyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkenyl such as vinyl etc., and the like), alkynyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkynyl such as ethynyl etc., and the like), cycloalkyl (e.g., C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, and the like), aryl (e.g., C₆₋₁₄ aryl such as phenyl etc., and the like) and the like. More preferred are alkyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl etc., and the like), aryl (e.g., C₆₋₁₄ aryl such as

phenyl etc., and the like) and the like. The "alkyl",
"alkenyl", "alkynyl", "cycloalkyl" and "aryl" may have, for
example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably,
halogen atom such as chlorine, fluorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as
5 methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned
"hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

R⁶ is preferably a hydrogen atom, C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally
having substituent(s) or the like. More preferably, it is a
hydrogen atom, C₁₋₆ alkyl or the like. Particularly preferably,
10 it is a hydrogen atom.

In the aforementioned formulas, ring A is a 5-membered
ring optionally having substituent(s).

As the substituent of the "5-membered ring optionally
having substituent(s)", for example, a halogen atom, a
15 hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), amino
optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a
substituent, mercapto optionally having a substituent, a
heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s) and the like
can be mentioned. Ring A may have 1 or 2 of the above-mentioned
20 substituents at substitutable position(s).

Preferable examples of the "halogen atom" include
fluorine, chlorine and bromine.

Preferable examples of the "hydrocarbon group" of the
"hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" include
25 alkyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl
etc., and the like), alkenyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkenyl such as vinyl
etc., and the like), alkynyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkynyl such as ethynyl
etc., and the like), cycloalkyl (e.g., C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl such as
cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, and the like),
30 aryl (e.g., C₆₋₁₄ aryl such as phenyl etc., and the like) and the
like. More preferable examples include alkyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl
such as methyl etc., and the like), alkenyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkenyl
such as vinyl etc., and the like) and the like. The "alkyl",
"alkenyl", "alkynyl", "cycloalkyl" and "aryl" may have, for

example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

Preferable examples of the "amino optionally having substituent(s)" include amino, C₁₋₆ alkylamino optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₀ arylamino optionally having substituent(s) and the like. More preferable examples include amino, mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino (e.g., methylamino, ethylamino, propylamino, isopropylamino, butylamino, tert-butylamino, dimethylamino, diethylamino, N-ethyl-N-methylamino and the like), C₆₋₁₀ arylamino (e.g., phenylamino and the like) and the like.

Preferable examples of the "hydroxy optionally having a substituent" include hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy (e.g., vinyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy (e.g., ethynyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy (e.g., cyclopropyloxy, cyclobutyloxy, cyclopentyloxy, cyclohexyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy (e.g., phenoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. More preferable examples include hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy (e.g., phenoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. The "C₁₋₆ alkoxy", "C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy", "C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy", "C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy" and "C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom such as chlorine, fluorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

Preferable examples of the "mercapto optionally having a substituent" include mercapto, C₁₋₆ alkylthio (e.g., methylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkenylthio (e.g., vinylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkynylthio (e.g.,

ethynylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio (e.g., cyclopropylthio, cyclobutylthio, cyclopentylthio, cyclohexylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ arylthio (e.g., phenylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. More preferable examples include mercapto, C₁₋₆ alkylthio (e.g., methylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ arylthio (e.g., phenylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. The "C₁₋₆ alkylthio", "C₂₋₆ alkenylthio", "C₂₋₆ alkynylthio", "C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio" and "C₆₋₁₄ arylthio" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom such as chlorine, fluorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

Preferable examples of the "heterocyclic group" of the "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)" include a 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom and the like. Specifically, for example, 1-, 2- or 3-pyrrolidinyl, 2- or 4-imidazolyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyrazolidinyl, piperidino, 2-, 3- or 4-piperidyl, 1- or 2-piperazinyl, morpholinyl, 2- or 3-thienyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2- or 3-furyl, pyrazinyl, 2-pyrimidinyl, 3-pyrrolyl, 3-pyridazinyl, 3-isothiazolyl, 3-isoxazolyl and the like can be mentioned. More preferable examples include a 6-membered nitrogen-containing heterocyclic group (e.g., pyridyl and the like) and the like. Preferable examples of the substituent of the "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)" include a halogen atom (e.g., chlorine, fluorine and the like), C₁₋₆ alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl and the like), C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy and the like), C₇₋₁₂ aralkyloxy-carbonyl (e.g., benzyloxycarbonyl and the like), amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino (e.g., methylamino, ethylamino and the like), di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino (e.g., dimethylamino, diethylamino and the like) and the like.

Ring A is preferably a 5-membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a halogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), amino optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a substituent and mercapto optionally having a substituent. Preferable examples of ring A include a 5-membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A), C₂₋₆ alkenyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A) and C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A), and the like. More preferable examples include a 5-membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A) and the like. Particularly, a 5-membered ring optionally having one C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A) is preferable. Preferable examples of the "substituent" include a halogen atom, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₇₋₁₂ aralkyl, phenyl and the like.

In the aforementioned formulas, ring B is a 6-membered ring optionally having substituent(s).

As the substituent of the "6-membered ring optionally having substituent(s)", a halogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), amino optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a substituent, mercapto optionally having a substituent, a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s) and the like can be mentioned. Ring B optionally has 1 or 2 substituents mentioned above at substitutable position(s). Preferable examples of these substituents include preferable examples of the substituent of ring A and the like.

Preferable examples of ring B include a 6-membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a halogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), amino optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally
5 having a substituent and mercapto optionally having a substituent, and the like. Ring B is more preferably a 6-membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a halogen atom, hydroxy optionally having a substituent and C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s). Of these, a 6-
10 membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 halogen atoms is preferable. Unsubstituted 6-membered ring is more preferable.

In the aforementioned formulas, ring C is a 5-membered ring optionally having substituent(s).

As the substituent of the "5-membered ring optionally
15 having substituent(s)", for example, a halogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a substituent, a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s) and the like can be mentioned. Ring C optionally has 1 or 2 substituents mentioned above at
20 substitutable position(s).

Preferable examples of the "halogen atom" include fluorine, chlorine and bromine.

Preferable examples of the "hydrocarbon group" of the "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" include
25 alkyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl etc., and the like), alkenyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkenyl such as vinyl etc., and the like), alkynyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkynyl such as ethynyl etc., and the like), cycloalkyl (e.g., C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, and the like),
30 aryl (e.g., C₆₋₁₄ aryl such as phenyl etc., and the like) and the like. More preferable examples include for example, alkyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl etc., and the like), aryl (e.g., C₆₋₁₄ aryl such as phenyl etc., and the like) and the like. The "alkyl", "alkenyl", "alkynyl", "cycloalkyl" and "aryl" may have, for

example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom such as chlorine, fluorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

5 Preferable examples of the "hydroxy optionally having a substituent" include hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy (e.g., vinyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy (e.g., ethynyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy (e.g., cyclopropyloxy, cyclobutyloxy, cyclopentyloxy, cyclohexyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy (e.g., phenoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. More preferable
10 examples include hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy (e.g., phenoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. The "C₁₋₆ alkoxy", "C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy", "C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy", "C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy" and "C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy" may have, for example, 1
20 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom such as chlorine, fluorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

As a preferable example of the "heterocyclic group" of the
25 "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)", for example, a 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom and the like can be mentioned. Specifically, for example, 1-, 2- or 3-
30 pyrrolidinyl, 2- or 4-imidazolinyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyrazolidinyl, piperidino, 2-, 3- or 4-piperidyl, 1- or 2-piperazinyl, morpholinyl, 2- or 3-thienyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2- or 3-furyl, pyrazinyl, 2-pyrimidinyl, 3-pyrrolyl, 3-pyridazinyl, 3-isothiazolyl, 3-isoxazolyl and the like can be mentioned.

Particularly preferably, a 6-membered nitrogen-containing heterocyclic group (e.g., pyridyl and the like) and the like can be mentioned. Preferable examples of the substituent of the "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)" include a
5 halogen atom (e.g., chlorine, fluorine and the like), C₁₋₆ alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl and the like), C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy and the like), C₇₋₁₂ aralkyloxy-carbonyl (e.g., benzyloxycarbonyl and the like), amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino (e.g., methylamino, ethylamino and the like), di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino
10 (e.g., dimethylamino, diethylamino and the like) and the like.

Preferable examples of ring C include a 5-membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a halogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a substituent and a heterocyclic group
15 optionally having substituent(s), and the like. More preferable examples of ring C include a 5-membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A), C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl optionally having
20 substituent(s) (e.g., 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A), C₆₋₁₀ aryl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A) and a 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., 1 to 5 substituents selected from
25 substituent group B). As the substituent, 1 or 2 substituents selected from a halogen atom, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, optionally halogenated C₆₋₁₀ aryl, optionally halogenated C₇₋₁₂ aralkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆
30 alkylamino, optionally halogenated 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group and the like can be mentioned. Ring C is more preferably a 5-membered ring optionally having one substituent selected from optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, optionally halogenated

phenyl, optionally halogenated C₇₋₁₂ aralkyl and optionally halogenated 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group.

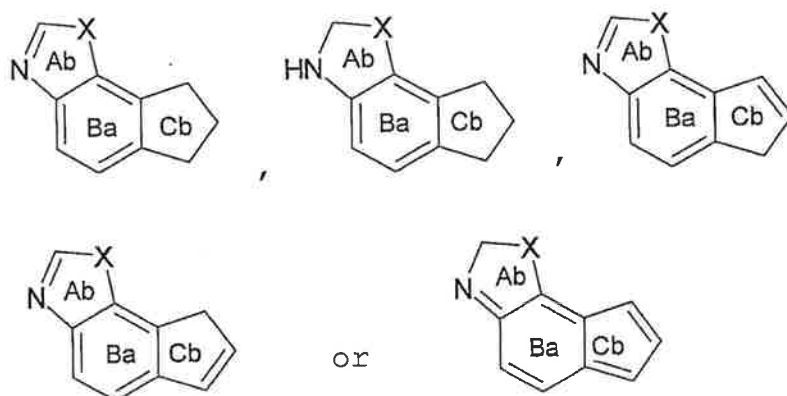
As the tricycle consisting of ring A, ring B and ring C, for example, a ring represented by the formula



5

wherein ring Aa is as defined for ring A, ring Ba is as defined for ring B, ring Ca is as defined for ring C, and X is as defined above, and the like can be mentioned. Preferable examples of the tricycle include a ring represented by the

10 formula



wherein ring Ab is as defined for ring A, ring Cb is as defined for ring C, and other symbols are as defined above, and the like.

15 In the aforementioned formulas, R² is a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s) or a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s).

The "halogen atom" for R² is preferably fluorine, chlorine
20 or bromine.

Preferable examples of the "hydrocarbon group" of the "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" for R² include alkyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl etc., and the like), alkenyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkenyl such

as vinyl etc., and the like), alkynyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkynyl such as ethynyl etc., and the like), cycloalkyl (e.g., C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, and the like), aryl (e.g., C₆₋₁₄ aryl such as phenyl etc., and the like) and the like. More preferable examples include alkyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl etc., and the like), aryl (e.g., C₆₋₁₄ aryl such as phenyl etc., and the like) and the like. The "alkyl", "alkenyl", "alkynyl", "cycloalkyl" and "aryl" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom such as chlorine, fluorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

Preferable examples of the "heterocyclic group" of the "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)" for R² include a 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom and the like. Specifically, for example, 1-, 2- or 3-pyrrolidinyl, 2- or 4-imidazolyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyrazolidinyl, piperidino, 2-, 3- or 4-piperidyl, 1- or 2-piperazinyl, morpholinyl, 2- or 3-thienyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2- or 3-furyl, pyrazinyl, 2-pyrimidinyl, 3-pyrrolyl, 3-pyridazinyl, 3-isothiazolyl, 3-isoxazolyl and the like can be mentioned. Particularly preferably, a 6-membered nitrogen-containing heterocyclic group (e.g., pyridyl and the like) and the like can be mentioned. Preferable examples of the substituent of the "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)" for R² include a halogen atom (e.g., chlorine, fluorine and the like), C₁₋₆ alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl and the like), C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy and the like), C₇₋₁₂ aralkyloxy-carbonyl (e.g., benzyloxycarbonyl and the like), amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino (e.g., methylamino, ethylamino and the like), di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino (e.g., dimethylamino, diethylamino and the like) and the like.

R^2 is preferably for example, a hydrogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s) or the like. More preferable examples include (i) a hydrogen atom, (ii) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s), (iii) C₆₋₁₀ aryl optionally having substituent(s), (iv) a 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s) and the like. More preferably, for example, (i) a hydrogen atom, (ii) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (iii) C₆₋₁₀ aryl optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a halogen atom, C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino and mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, (iv) a 6-membered nitrogen-containing heterocyclic group optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from a halogen atom, C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino and mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino and the like can be mentioned. More preferable R^2 includes a hydrogen atom, C₁₋₆ alkyl, phenyl and the like. More preferable R^2 includes a hydrogen atom, C₁₋₆ alkyl and the like. Particularly preferable R^2 is a hydrogen atom.

In the aforementioned formulas, R^3 is a hydrogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), amino optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a substituent, mercapto optionally having a substituent or a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s).

Preferable examples of the "hydrocarbon group" of the "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" for R^3 include alkyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl etc., and the like), alkenyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkenyl such as vinyl etc., and the like), alkynyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkynyl such as ethynyl etc., and the like), cycloalkyl (e.g., C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, and the like), aryl (e.g., C₆₋₁₄ aryl such as phenyl etc., and the like) and the like. More preferable examples include alkyl (e.g., C₁₋₆ alkyl such as methyl etc., and the like), alkenyl (e.g., C₂₋₆ alkenyl such as vinyl etc., and the like) and the

like. The "alkyl", "alkenyl", "alkynyl", "cycloalkyl" and "aryl" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

5 Preferable examples of the substituent of the "amino optionally having substituent(s)" for R^3 include 1 or 2 substituents selected from lower alkyl optionally having substituent(s), aryl optionally having substituent(s) and the like. More preferably, one lower alkyl optionally having
10 substituent(s) is used. As the "lower alkyl", for example, C_{1-6} alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl etc., and the like are used. The "lower alkyl" may have, for example, 1 to 3 substituents that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like. As
15 the "aryl", for example, C_{6-10} aryl such as phenyl etc., and the like are used. The "aryl" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom such as fluorine, chlorine etc.; C_{1-6} alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group"
20 may have, and the like. As the "amino optionally having substituent(s)", for example, C_{6-10} arylamino (e.g., phenylamino and the like) optionally having 1 to 3 C_{1-6} alkoxy (e.g., methoxy and the like), or mono- or di- C_{1-6} alkylamino (e.g., methylamino, ethylamino, propylamino, isopropylamino, butylamino, tert-
25 butylamino, dimethylamino, diethylamino, N-ethyl-N-methylamino. and the like) and the like are widely used.

Preferable examples of the "hydroxy optionally having a substituent" for R^3 include hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy and the like) optionally having
30 substituent(s), C_{2-6} alkenyloxy (e.g., vinyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C_{2-6} alkynyloxy (e.g., ethynyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C_{3-6} cycloalkyloxy (e.g., cyclopropyloxy, cyclobutyloxy, cyclopentyloxy, cyclohexyloxy and the like) optionally having

substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy (e.g., phenoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. More preferable examples include hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy (e.g.,
5 phenoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. The "C₁₋₆ alkoxy", "C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy", "C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy", "C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy" and "C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom such as chlorine, fluorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy,
10 ethoxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

Preferable examples of the "mercapto optionally having a substituent" for R³ include mercapto, C₁₋₆ alkylthio (e.g., methylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio and the like)
15 optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkenylthio (e.g., vinylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkynylthio (e.g., ethynylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio (e.g., cyclopropylthio, cyclobutylthio, cyclopentylthio, cyclohexylthio and the like)
20 optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ arylthio (e.g., phenylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. More preferable examples include mercapto, C₁₋₆ alkylthio (e.g., methylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ arylthio (e.g., phenylthio and the like) optionally having
25 substituent(s) and the like. The "C₁₋₆ alkylthio", "C₂₋₆ alkenylthio", "C₂₋₆ alkynylthio", "C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio" and "C₆₋₁₄ arylthio" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom such as chlorine, fluorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the
30 like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

Preferable examples of the "heterocyclic group" of the "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)" for R³ include a 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group containing,

besides a carbon atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, and the like. Specifically, for example, 1-, 2- or 3-pyrrolidinyl, 2- or 4-imidazolyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyrazolidinyl, piperidino, 2-, 3- or 4-piperidyl, 1- or 2-piperazinyl, morpholinyl, 2- or 3-thienyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2- or 3-furyl, pyrazinyl, 2-pyrimidinyl, 3-pyrrolyl, 3-pyridazinyl, 3-isothiazolyl, 3-isoxazolyl and the like are used. Particularly preferably, a 6-membered nitrogen-containing heterocyclic group (e.g., pyridyl and the like) and the like are used. Preferable examples of the substituent of the "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)" for R³ include a halogen atom (e.g., chlorine, fluorine and the like), C₁₋₆ alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl and the like), C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy and the like), C₇₋₁₂ aralkyloxy-carbonyl (e.g., benzyloxycarbonyl and the like), amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino (e.g., methylamino, ethylamino and the like), di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino (e.g., dimethylamino, diethylamino and the like) and the like.

R³ is preferably a hydrogen atom, C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkenyl optionally having substituent(s), amino optionally having substituent(s) or the like. More preferable examples include a hydrogen atom, C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s) and the like.

As more preferable examples for R³, (i) a hydrogen atom, (ii) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from halogen atom and C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (iii) C₆₋₁₀ aryl-C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino, and the like can be mentioned.

R^3 is preferably, for example, (i) a hydrogen atom, (ii) C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s), (iii) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl, (iv) C_{6-14} aryl, (v) hydroxy optionally having a substituent, (vi) mercapto optionally having a substituent, 5 (vii) amino optionally having substituent(s) or the like. More preferable examples include (i) a hydrogen atom, (ii) C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from phenyl, hydroxy, a halogen atom, C_{1-6} alkyl-carbonyl, C_{7-13} aralkyloxy, pyridyl and the like, (iii) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl, (iv) phenyl, (v) C_{1-6} alkoxy, (vi) mercapto, (vii) C_{1-6} alkylthio, (viii) mono- or di- 10 C_{1-6} alkylamino and the like.

In the aforementioned formulas, R^{4a} and R^{4b} are the same or different and each is a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), amino 15 optionally having substituent(s), hydroxy optionally having a substituent, mercapto optionally having a substituent or a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s).

The "halogen atom" for R^{4a} or R^{4b} is preferably fluorine, chlorine or bromine.

20 Preferable examples of the "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" for R^{4a} or R^{4b} include those similar to the "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" for R^3 .

Preferable examples of the "amino optionally having substituent(s)" for R^{4a} or R^{4b} include those similar to the "amino 25 optionally having substituent(s)" for R^3 .

Preferable examples of the "hydroxy optionally having a substituent" for R^{4a} or R^{4b} include hydroxy, C_{1-6} alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C_{2-6} alkenyloxy (e.g., vinyloxy and the 30 like) optionally having substituent(s), C_{2-6} alkynyloxy (e.g., ethynyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C_{3-6} cycloalkyloxy (e.g., cyclopropyloxy, cyclobutyloxy, cyclopentyloxy, cyclohexyloxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C_{6-14} aryloxy (e.g., phenoxy and the like)

optionally having substituent(s) and the like. More preferable examples include hydroxy, C₁₋₆ alkoxy (e.g., methoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy (e.g., phenoxy and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. The "C₁₋₆ alkoxy", "C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy", "C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy", "C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy" and "C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom such as chlorine, fluorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

Preferable examples of the "mercapto optionally having a substituent" for R^{4a} or R^{4b} include mercapto, C₁₋₆ alkylthio (e.g., methylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkenylthio (e.g., vinylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkynylthio (e.g., ethynylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio (e.g., cyclopropylthio, cyclobutylthio, cyclopentylthio, cyclohexylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ arylthio (e.g., phenylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like.

More preferable examples include mercapto, C₁₋₆ alkylthio (e.g., methylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s), C₆₋₁₄ arylthio (e.g., phenylthio and the like) optionally having substituent(s) and the like. The "C₁₋₆ alkylthio", "C₂₋₆ alkenylthio", "C₂₋₆ alkynylthio", "C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio" and "C₆₋₁₄ arylthio" may have, for example, 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3, substituents (preferably, halogen atom such as chlorine, fluorine etc.; C₁₋₆ alkoxy such as methoxy, ethoxy etc., and the like) that the aforementioned "hydrocarbon group" may have, and the like.

Preferable examples of the "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)" for R^{4a} or R^{4b} include those similar to the "heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s)" recited as

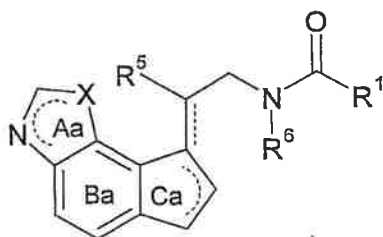
examples of the substituents that the "6-membered ring optionally having substituent(s)" for ring B may have.

Preferable examples of R^{4a} include a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, hydroxy optionally having a substituent, C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s) and the like. More preferably, R^{4a} is a hydrogen atom or a halogen atom, and particularly preferably a hydrogen atom.

Preferable examples of R^{4b} include a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, hydroxy optionally having a substituent, C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having substituent(s) and the like. More preferably, R^{4b} is a hydrogen atom or a halogen atom, and particularly preferably a hydrogen atom.

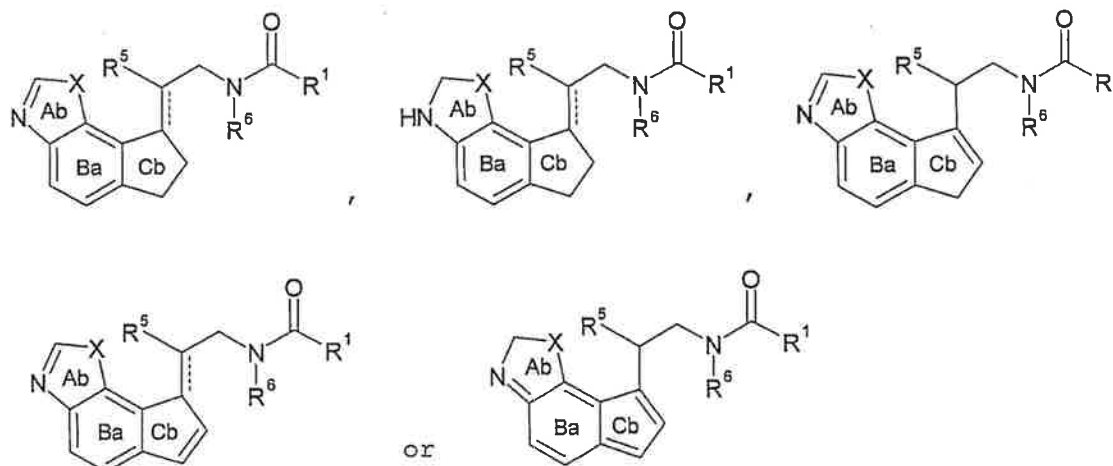
In the aforementioned formulas, X is an oxygen atom or a sulfur atom.

As the formula (I), for example, the following formula



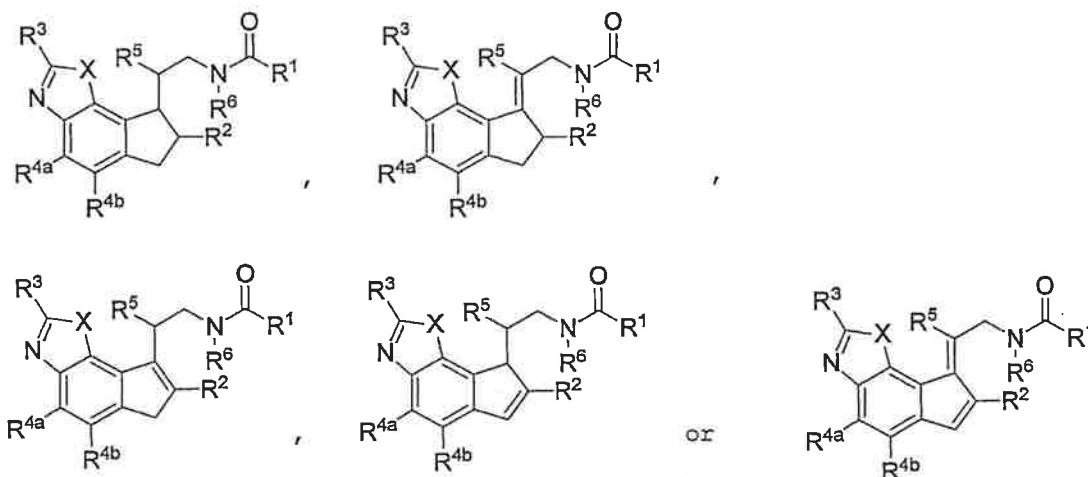
wherein each symbol is as defined above, can be mentioned.

Preferable examples of compound (I) include a compound represented by the formula



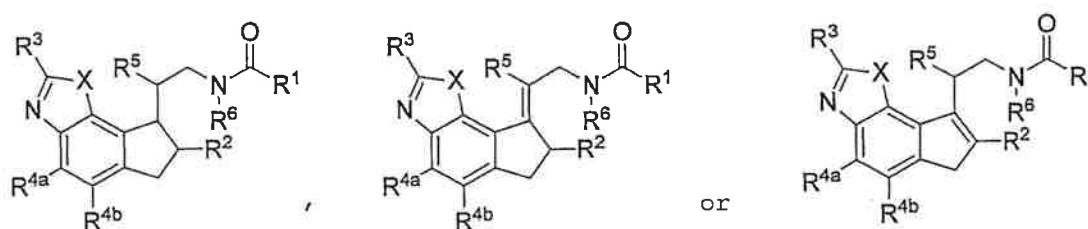
wherein each symbol is as defined above, and the like.

More preferable examples of the compound (I) include a compound represented by the formula



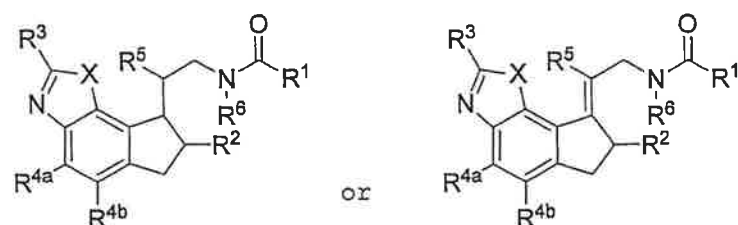
wherein each symbol is as defined above, and the like.

5 More preferable examples of the compound (I) include a compound represented by the formula



wherein each symbol is as defined above, and the like.

10 Particularly preferable examples of the compound (I) include a compound represented by the formula



wherein each symbol is as defined above, and the like.

Preferable examples of compound (I) include the following compounds and the like.

15 [compound A]

A compound of the formula (I'), wherein

R¹ is C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s), C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl optionally having substituent(s) or C₂₋₆ alkenyl optionally having substituent(s);

R² is a hydrogen atom, a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s) or a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s);

R³ is a hydrogen atom, C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s), C₂₋₆ alkenyl optionally having substituent(s) or amino optionally having substituent(s);

R^{4a} and R^{4b} are the same or different and each is a hydrogen atom, a halogen atom, hydroxy optionally having a substituent or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s);

R⁵ is a hydrogen atom or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s); and

R⁶ is a hydrogen atom or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s), or a salt thereof.

[compound B]

A compound of the formula (I'), wherein

R¹ is (i) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,

(ii) amino optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl and (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or

(iii) a 5- to 14-membered heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group B;

R² is

(i) a hydrogen atom,

(ii) a halogen atom,

(iii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or

5 (iv) a 5- to 14-membered heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group B;

R³ is,

(i) a hydrogen atom,

10 (ii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,

(iii) amino optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆

15 cycloalkyl and (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,

(iv) (1) hydroxy, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from

20 substituent group A,

(v) (1) mercapto, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkylthio, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenylthio, (d) C₂₋₆ alkynylthio, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio or (e) C₆₋₁₄ arylthio, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or

25 (vi) a 5- to 14-membered heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom and a nitrogen atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group B;

R^{4a} and R^{4b} are the same or different and each is

30 (i) a hydrogen atom,

(ii) a halogen atom,

(iii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,

(iv) amino optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl and (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,

5 (v) (1) hydroxy, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or

(vi) (1) mercapto, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkylthio, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenylthio, (d) C₂₋₆ alkynylthio, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio or (e) C₆₋₁₄ arylthio, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A;

R⁵ is

(i) a hydrogen atom,

15 (ii) a halogen atom,

(iii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,

(iv) amino optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from 20 (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl and (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,

(v) (1) hydroxy, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy, each 25 of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or

(vi) (1) mercapto, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkylthio, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenylthio, (d) C₂₋₆ alkynylthio, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio or (e) C₆₋₁₄ arylthio, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents 30 selected from substituent group A;

R⁶ is,

(i) a hydrogen atom or

(ii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A; and
X is an oxygen atom or a sulfur atom, or a salt thereof.

5 [compound C]

A compound of the formula (I'), wherein

R¹ is C₁₋₆ alkyl, C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or C₂₋₆ alkenyl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A;

10 R² is (i) a hydrogen atom, (ii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or (iii) a 6-membered nitrogen-containing heterocyclic group (e.g., pyridyl and the like) optionally
15 having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent B;

R³ is (i) a hydrogen atom, (ii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl or (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or (iii) amino optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c)
20 C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl and (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A;

R^{4a} and R^{4b} are the same or different and each is (i) a hydrogen atom, (ii) a halogen atom, (iii) hydroxy optionally substituted
25 by C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A or (iv) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A;

R⁵ is (i) a hydrogen atom or (ii) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A;

30 R⁶ is (i) a hydrogen atom or (ii) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A; and
X is an oxygen atom or a sulfur atom, or a salt thereof.

[compound D]

A compound of the formula (I'), wherein

R¹ is C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A);

R² is a hydrogen atom;

R³ is a hydrogen atom or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A);

R^{4a} and R^{4b} are the same or different and each is a hydrogen atom or a halogen atom;

R⁵ is a hydrogen atom or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A); and

R⁶ is a hydrogen atom, or a salt thereof.

[compound E]

A compound of the formula (I'), wherein

R¹ is C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, C₇₋₁₃ aralkyloxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl (e.g., phenyl), C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy and heterocyclic group (e.g., a 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom; for example, pyridyl and the like) (hereinafter to be abbreviated as "substituent group C");

R² is a hydrogen atom;

R³ is a hydrogen atom or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group C;

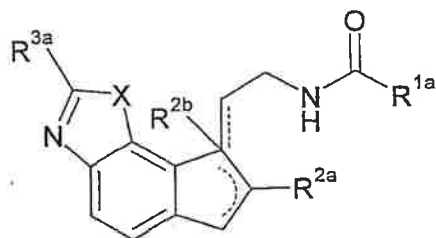
R^{4a} and R^{4b} are the same or different and each is a hydrogen atom or a halogen atom;

R⁵ is a hydrogen atom or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group C; and

R⁶ is a hydrogen atom, or a salt thereof.

[compound F]

A compound represented by the formula



wherein R^{1a} is (a) C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having 1 to 3

5 substituents selected from C_{1-6} alkyl-carbonyloxy, hydroxy and halogen atom, (b) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl, (c) phenyl or (d) mono- or di- C_{1-6} alkylamino;

R^{2a} is a hydrogen atom or C_{1-6} alkyl;

R^{2b} is a hydrogen atom or hydroxy;

10 R^{3a} is (a) a hydrogen atom, (b) C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from phenyl, hydroxy, a halogen atom, C_{1-6} alkyl-carbonyl, C_{7-13} aralkyloxy and pyridyl, (c) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl, (d) phenyl, (e) C_{1-6} alkoxy, (f) mercapto, (g) C_{1-6} alkylthio or (h) mono- or di- C_{1-6} alkylamino, or a salt thereof.

15 Preferable specific examples of compound (I) include

N-[2-(2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide,

N-[2-(2-methyl-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

N-[2-(2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-

20 ylidene)ethyl]propionamide,

N-{2-[2-(4-phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene]ethyl}acetamide,

N-[2-(2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide,

25 N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

(R)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

(S)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-

30 yl)ethyl]acetamide,

N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide,

(R)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide,

5 (S)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide,

N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

(R)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

10 (S)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

N-[2-(2-ethyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

15 (R)-N-[2-(2-ethyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

(S)-N-[2-(2-ethyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

N-[2-(2-methoxy-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

(R)-N-[2-(2-methoxy-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

(S)-N-[2-(2-methoxy-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide or a salt thereof and the like.

25 As a salt of compound (I), for example, a pharmacologically acceptable salt and the like are used. For example, a salt with inorganic base, a salt with organic base, a salt with inorganic acid, a salt with organic acid, a salt with basic or acidic amino acid and the like can be mentioned.

30 Preferable examples of salts with inorganic base include alkali metal salt such as sodium salt, potassium salt and the like, alkaline earth metal salt such as calcium salt, magnesium salt and the like, and aluminum salt, ammonium salt and the like. Preferable examples of salts with organic base include salts

with trimethylamine, triethylamine, pyridine, picoline, 2,6-lutidine, ethanolamine, diethanolamine, triethanolamine, cyclohexylamine, dicyclohexylamine, N,N'-dibenzylethylenediamine and the like. Preferable examples of salts with inorganic acid
5 include salts with hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, nitric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid and the like. Preferable examples of salts with organic acid include salts with formic acid, acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, phthalic acid, fumaric acid, oxalic acid, tartaric acid, maleic acid, citric acid,
10 succinic acid, malic acid, methanesulfonic acid, benzenesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid and the like. Preferable examples of salts with basic amino acid include salts with arginine, lysine, ornithine and the like, and preferable examples of salts with acidic amino acid include salts with aspartic acid,
15 glutamic acid and the like. Of these, a pharmaceutically acceptable salt is preferable. Examples thereof when compound (I) has a basic functional group include salts with inorganic acid such as hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, nitric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid and the like, and salts with
20 organic acid such as acetic acid, phthalic acid, fumaric acid, tartaric acid, maleic acid, citric acid, succinic acid, methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid and the like. Examples thereof when compound (I) has an acidic functional group include alkali metal salts such as sodium salt, potassium
25 salt and the like, alkaline earth metal salts such as calcium salt, magnesium salt and the like, ammonium salt and the like.

The production methods of compound (I) of the present invention are described in the following.

30 Compound (I) of the present invention can be obtained, for example, by the method shown by the following reaction scheme or a method analogous thereto and the like.

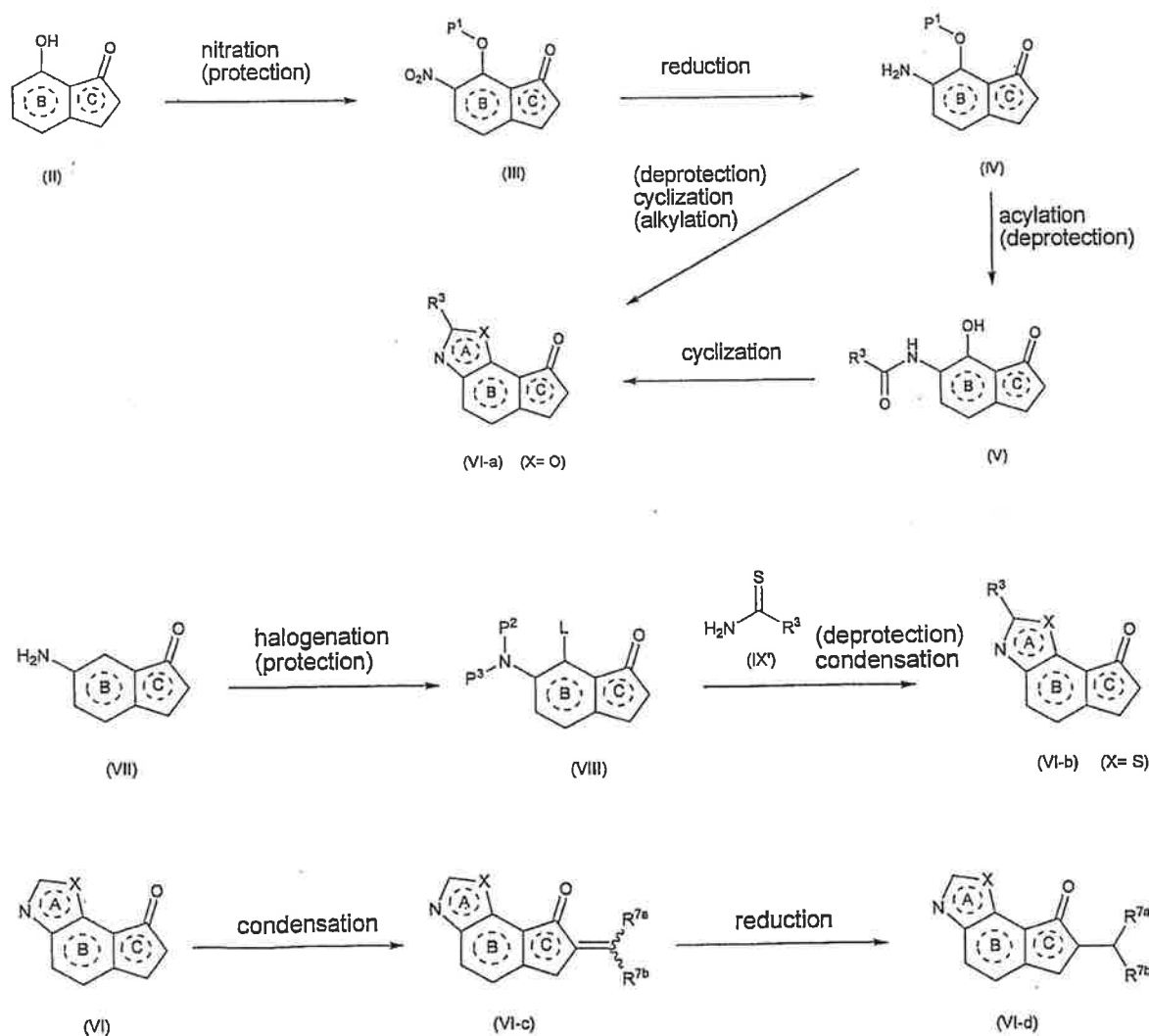
Compounds (II) - (XXX) in the schemes include salts

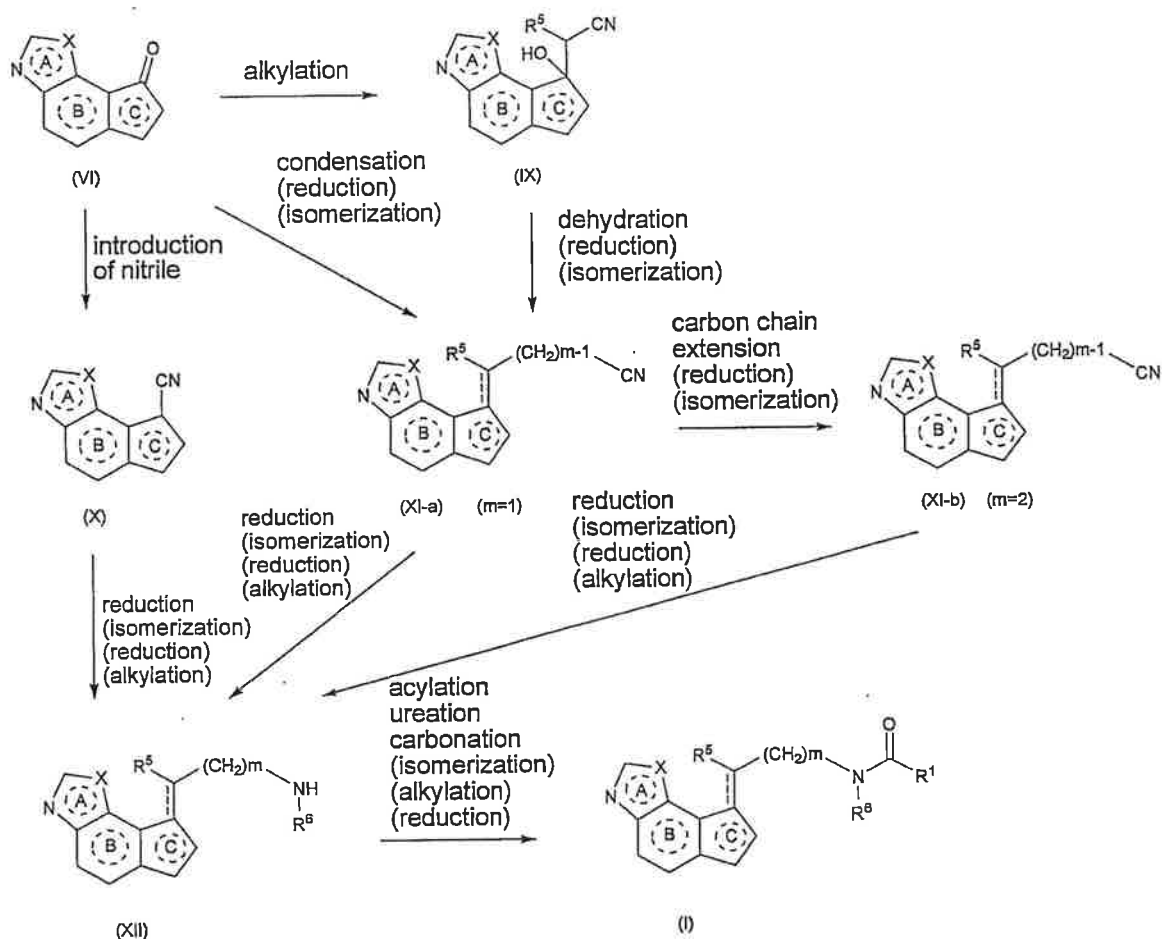
thereof. As the salt, for example, one similar to the salt of compound (I) and the like are used.

The compound obtained in each step can be directly used as a reaction mixture or a crude product for the next reaction. It can be isolated from a reaction mixture according to a conventional method, and can be easily purified by a separation means such as recrystallization, distillation, chromatography and the like.

In the following, reaction schemes are shown, wherein each
10 symbol of the compound is as defined above.

(Reaction 1)





Compound (II) can be produced by a method known per se, for example, the methods described in J. Am. Chem. Soc., Vol. 71, p. 3523 (1949), J. Chem. Res. Miniprint, Vol. 11, p. 2544 (1995) and the like, or a method analogous thereto.

Compound (VII) can be produced by a method known per se, for example, the methods described in J. Chem. Soc., Vol. 123, p. 1469 (1923), J. Med. Chem., Vol. 46, p. 399 (2003) and the like, or a method analogous thereto.

Compound (IX') can be easily obtained from commercially available ones, or can also be produced by a method known per se, or a method analogous thereto.

When a compound in the schemes is commercially available, the commercially available product can be directly used.

Compound (III) can be produced by reacting compound (II) with a nitrating reagent. As the nitrating reagent, for

example, metal nitrate salts such as sodium nitrate, potassium nitrate and the like, acetyl nitrate, dinitrogen pentaoxide, nitronium salt, nitric acid, mixed acid (mixture of nitric acid and sulfuric acid), and mixtures thereof can be mentioned. The
5 nitrating reagent is used in an amount of about 0.8 - 20 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 2.0 mol, relative to 1 mol of compound (II). When nitric acid, mixed acid and the like are to be used as nitrating reagents, they can also be used in excess as reaction solvents. This reaction is advantageously performed
10 using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether,
15 tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like),
20 halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), nitriles (e.g., acetonitrile, propionitrile and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like), acid anhydrides (e.g., acetic anhydride and the like), organic acids (e.g., formic
25 acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, methanesulfonic acid and the like), inorganic acids (e.g., sulfuric acid and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. The reaction time is generally 10 min - 24 hr, preferably 30 min - 12 hr. The
30 reaction temperature is generally -20°C - 150°C, preferably 0°C - 80°C.

The hydroxy of compound (III) may be protected by a protecting group when desired. As the protecting group, a group represented by P¹ [wherein P¹ is i) a hydrogen atom, ii) C₁₋₆

alkyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., methyl, ethyl and the like), C₇₋₁₀ aralkyl (e.g., benzyl, p-methoxybenzyl and the like), iii) C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., acetyl, propionyl and the like), benzoyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl (e.g., methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl (Boc) and the like), allyloxycarbonyl (Aloc), phenoxy-carbonyl, fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl (Fmoc), C₇₋₁₀ aralkyl-carbonyl (e.g., benzylcarbonyl and the like), C₇₋₁₀ aralkyloxy-carbonyl (e.g., benzyloxycarbonyl (Z) and the like), or iv) C₁₋₆ alkyl-silyl optionally having substituent(s) (e.g., triethylsilyl, tert-butyldimethylsilyl and the like) or the like. As these substituents, 1 to 3 substituents selected from phenyl, a halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine and the like), C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl (e.g., methylcarbonyl, ethylcarbonyl, butylcarbonyl and the like), nitro and the like can be mentioned] and the like can be mentioned. The protecting group can be introduced by a method known per se, for example, the method described in Wiley-Interscience, 1999 "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 3rd Ed." (by Theodora W. Greene, Peter G. M. Wuts) and the like.

Compound (IV) can be produced by subjecting compound (III) to a reduction reaction. The reduction reaction is generally performed according to a conventional method using a reducing agent. As the reducing agent, for example, metal hydrides such as aluminum hydride, diisobutylaluminum hydride, tributyltin hydride and the like, metal hydride complex compounds such as sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, sodium borohydride, lithium aluminum hydride and the like, borane complexes such as borane tetrahydrofuran complex, borane dimethyl sulfide complex and the like, alkylboranes such as hexylborane, disiamylborane and the like, diborane, metals such as zinc, aluminum, tin, iron and the like, alkali metal (e.g., sodium, lithium etc.)/liquid ammonia (Birch reduction), and the like can be mentioned. The amount of the reducing agent to be

used is appropriately determined according to the kind of the reducing agent. For example, the amount of the metal hydride, the metal hydride complex compound, the borane complex, the alkylborane or the diborane to be used is about 0.25 - 10 mol, preferably about 0.5 - 5 mol, per 1 mol of compound (III) and the amount of the metals (including alkali metal to be used in Birch reduction) to be used is about 1.0 - 20 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (III). This reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), organic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propanoic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, methanesulfonic acid and the like), water and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be used, it is generally 10 min - 100 hr, preferably 30 min - 50 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -20°C - 100°C, preferably 0°C - 80°C.

The reduction reaction of compound (III) may be carried out by a hydrogenation reaction. In the case of a hydrogenation reaction, for example, a catalyst such as palladium carbon, platinum(IV) oxide, Raney nickel, Raney cobalt etc., and the like are used. The amount of the catalyst to be used is about 1.0 - 2000 wt%, preferably about 10 - 300 wt%, relative to

compound (III). Various hydrogen sources can also be used instead of gaseous hydrogen. As the "hydrogen source", formic acid, ammonium formate, triethylammonium formate, sodium phosphinate, hydrazine and the like are used. The amount of the hydrogen source to be used is about 1.0 - 10 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (III). This reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent inert to the reaction. For example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), organic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, methanesulfonic acid and the like), esters (e.g., methyl acetate, ethyl acetate, butyl acetate and the like), water and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. The reaction time is generally 10 min - 24 hr, preferably 30 min - 12 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -20°C - 150°C, preferably 0°C - 80°C. While the reaction time varies depending on the kind and amount of the reducing agent and the activity and amount of the catalyst to be used, it is generally 30 min - 100 hr, preferably 1 hr - 50 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -20°C - 120°C, preferably 0°C - 80°C. When gaseous hydrogen is used, the pressure of hydrogen is generally 1 - 100 atm.

Compound (VI-a) wherein X is an oxygen atom can be produced by reacting compound (IV) with a carboxylic acid, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, to give compound

(V), then subjecting compound (V) to cyclization reaction known per se. As the carboxylic acid, for example, a compound represented by the formula $R^3\text{-COOH}$, wherein R^3 is as defined above, can be mentioned. As the reactive derivative of the carboxylic acid, for example, acid halides such as acid chloride, acid bromide and the like, acid amides with pyrazole, imidazole, benzotriazole and the like, acid anhydrides such as acetic anhydride, propionic anhydride, butyric anhydride and the like, acid azides, active esters such as diethoxyphosphoric acid ester, diphenoxyphosphoric acid ester, p-nitrophenyl ester, 2,4-dinitrophenyl ester, cyanomethyl ester, pentachlorophenyl ester, ester with N-hydroxysuccinimide, ester with N-hydroxyphthalimide, ester with 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, ester with 6-chloro-1-hydroxybenzotriazole, ester with 1-hydroxy-1H-2-pyridone and the like, active thioesters such as 2-pyridyl thioester, 2-benzothiazolyl thioester etc., and the like can be mentioned.

Instead of using the reactive derivative, the carboxylic acid or a salt thereof may be directly reacted with compound (IV) in the presence of a suitable condensation agent. As the condensation agent, for example, N,N'-disubstituted carbodiimides such as N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide (WSC) hydrochloride and the like, azolides such as N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole and the like, dehydrating agents such as N-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethoxy-1,2-dihydroquinoline, phosphorus oxychloride, alkoxyacetylene and the like, 2-halogenopyridinium salts such as 2-chloromethylpyridinium iodide, 2-fluoro-1-methylpyridinium iodide etc., and the like can be mentioned. When these condensation agents are used, the reaction is considered to proceed via a reactive derivative of carboxylic acid. The carboxylic acid or a reactive derivative thereof is generally used in an amount of about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 2.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (IV). This reaction is

advantageously performed using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether,

5 tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), aromatic amines (e.g., pyridine, lutidine and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, 10 hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), nitriles (e.g., acetonitrile, propionitrile and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like) and the like, or a mixed 15 solvent thereof and the like are preferable. When an acidic substance is released due to the reaction, the reaction can be carried out in the presence of a deacidifying agent to remove the substance from the reaction system. As the deacidifying agent, for example, carbonates such as sodium carbonate, 20 potassium carbonate, sodium hydrogencarbonate and the like, aromatic amines such as pyridine, lutidine and the like, tertiary amines such as triethylamine, tripropylamine, tributylamine, cyclohexyldimethylamine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, N-methylpiperidine, N-methylpyrrolidine, N- 25 methylmorpholine etc., and the like can be used. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be used, it is generally 10 min - 24 hr, preferably 30 min - 4 hr. The reaction temperature is generally 0°C - 100°C, preferably 0°C - 70°C.

30 As the cyclization reaction of compound (V), for example, a method using heating, a method using an acidic substance, a method analogous thereto and the like are used. In addition, compound (VI-a) may be directly produced from compound (IV) by the above-mentioned acylation step. Cyclization by heating is

advantageously performed without solvent or using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as high boiling point hydrocarbons such as 1,2,3,4-
5 tetrahydronaphthalene and the like, high boiling point ethers such as diphenyl ether, diethyleneglycol dimethyl ether and the like, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, xylene etc., and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. The reaction time is generally 10 min - 100 hr,
10 preferably 1 hr - 10 hr. The reaction temperature is generally 100°C - 300°C, preferably 100°C - 200°C.

For cyclization reaction using an acidic substance, for example, an acidic substance such as phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus pentachloride, phosphorus trichloride, thionyl
15 chloride, hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, polyphosphoric acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate and the like are used. The acidic substance is used in an amount of about 0.05 - 100 mol, preferably about 0.1 - 10 mol, per 1 mol of compound (V). This reaction is advantageously carried out
20 without solvent or using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic
25 hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon
30 tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. The reaction time is generally 10 min - 100 hr, preferably 30 min - 12 hr. The

reaction temperature is generally 0°C - 200°C, preferably 0°C - 150°C.

Compound (VI-a) can also be produced by reacting compound (IV) with an ortho ester or an ortho carbonate. As the ortho ester, for example, triethyl orthoformate, trimethyl orthoacetate and the like can be mentioned. As the ortho carbonate, for example, tetramethoxyethane and the like can be mentioned. The ortho ester or ortho carbonate is generally used in an amount of about 1.0 - 100 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 10 mol, per 1 mol of compound (IV). The reaction is carried out, for example, by a method using heating, a method using an acidic substance, a method analogous thereto and the like. Cyclization by heating is advantageously performed without solvent or using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, solvents such as ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. The reaction time is generally 10 min - 100 hr, preferably 1 hr - 24 hr. The reaction temperature is generally 0°C - 200°C, preferably 40°C - 150°C.

For cyclization reaction using an acidic substance, for example, an acidic substance such as phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus pentachloride, phosphorus trichloride, thionyl chloride, hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, polyphosphoric acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate and the like are used. The acidic substance is used in an amount of

about 0.05 - 100 mol, preferably about 0.1 - 10 mol, per 1 mol of compound (IV). This reaction is advantageously carried out without solvent or using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. The reaction time is generally 10 min - 100 hr, preferably 30 min - 12 hr. The reaction temperature is generally 0°C - 200°C, preferably 0°C - 150°C.

Compound (VI-a) can also be produced by reacting compound (IV) with thiocarbonyl. As the thiocarbonyl, for example, potassium O-ethyl dithiocarbonate, carbon disulfide, thiocarbonyldiimidazole, thiophosgene, thiourea and the like can be mentioned. To promote the reaction, the reaction can be carried out in the presence of an acid or a base. As the acid, for example, inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, nitric acid, hydrobromic acid, phosphoric acid and the like, organic acids such as acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, oxalic acid, phthalic acid, fumaric acid, tartaric acid, maleic acid, citric acid, succinic acid, methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, 10-camphorsulfonic acid and the like, boron trifluoride ether complex and the like can be mentioned. As the base, for example, inorganic bases such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide and the like, basic salts such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate,

cesium carbonate, calcium carbonate, sodium hydrogencarbonate and the like, organic bases such as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, tributylamine, cyclohexyldimethylamine, pyridine, lutidine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, N,N-
5 dimethylaniline, N-methylpiperidine, N-methylpyrrolidine, N-methylmorpholine, 1,5-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]-5-nonene, 1,4-diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]-7-undecene and the like, metal alkoxides such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium tert-butoxide and the like, alkali metal
10 hydrides such as sodium hydride, potassium hydride and the like, metal amides such as sodium amide, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hexamethyldisilazide and the like, organic lithiums such as methyllithium, n-butyllithium, sec-butyllithium, tert-butyllithium etc., and the like can be mentioned. The
15 thiocarbonyl is generally used in an amount of about 1.0 - 100 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 10 mol, per 1 mol of compound (IV). The acid or base is used in an amount of about 0.1 - 200 mol, preferably about 0.1 - 100 mol, per 1 mol of compound (IV). This reaction is advantageously carried out without solvent or
20 using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether,
25 tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like),
30 halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), nitriles (e.g., acetonitrile, propionitrile and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like), esters (e.g., methyl acetate, ethyl acetate, butyl acetate and the like), ketones

(e.g., acetone, methyl ethyl ketone and the like), aromatic organic bases (e.g., pyridine, lutidine and the like), acid anhydrides (e.g., acetic anhydride and the like), organic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, methanesulfonic acid and the like), inorganic acids (e.g., sulfuric acid and the like), water and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be used, it is generally 10 min - 170 hr, preferably 1 hr - 80 hr. The reaction temperature is generally 0°C - 250°C, preferably 0°C - 200°C. To promote the reaction, a microwave may be irradiated.

Compound (VI-a) can also be produced by reacting compound (IV) with dichloromethylene iminium or carbamoyl. As the dichloromethylene iminium, for example, dichloromethylenedimethyliminium chloride and the like can be mentioned. As the carbamoyl, for example, dimethylcarbamoyl chloride and the like can be mentioned. To promote the reaction, the reaction can be carried out in the presence of an acid or a base. As the acid, for example, inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, nitric acid, hydrobromic acid, phosphoric acid and the like, organic acids such as acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, oxalic acid, phthalic acid, fumaric acid, tartaric acid, maleic acid, citric acid, succinic acid, methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, 10-camphorsulfonic acid and the like, boron trifluoride ether complex and the like can be mentioned. As the base, for example, inorganic bases such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide and the like, basic salts such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, calcium carbonate, sodium hydrogencarbonate and the like, organic bases such as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, tributylamine, cyclohexyldimethylamine, pyridine, lutidine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, N-methylpiperidine, N-methylpyrrolidine, N-methylmorpholine, 1,5-

diazabicyclo[4.3.0]-5-nonene, 1,4-diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]-7-undecene and the like, metal alkoxides such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium tert-butoxide and the like, alkali metal hydrides such as sodium
5 hydride, potassium hydride and the like, metal amides such as sodium amide, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hexamethyldisilazide and the like, organic lithiums such as methyllithium, n-butyllithium, sec-butyllithium, tert-butyllithium etc., and the like can be mentioned. The
10 dichloromethylene iminium or carbamoyl is generally used in an amount of about 1.0 - 100 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 10 mol, per 1 mol of compound (IV). The acid or base is used in an amount of about 0.1 - 200 mol, preferably about 0.1 - 100 mol, per 1 mol of compound (IV). This reaction is advantageously
15 carried out without solvent or using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl
20 ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric
25 triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), nitriles (e.g., acetonitrile, propionitrile and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like), esters (e.g., methyl acetate, ethyl
30 acetate, butyl acetate and the like), ketones (e.g., acetone, methyl ethyl ketone and the like), aromatic organic bases (e.g., pyridine, lutidine and the like), acid anhydrides (e.g., acetic anhydride and the like), organic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid,

methanesulfonic acid and the like), inorganic acids (e.g., sulfuric acid and the like), water and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be used, it is generally 10 min - 170 hr, preferably 1 hr - 80 hr. The reaction temperature is generally 0°C - 250°C, preferably 0°C - 200°C. To promote the reaction, a microwave may be irradiated.

R^3 of compound (VI-a) may be introduced by alkylation in the presence of a base using an alkylating agent when desired. As the alkylating agent, for example, alkyl halides such as methyl iodide, ethyl iodide and the like, sulfonic acid esters of alcohol and the like can be mentioned. The alkylating agent is used in an amount of about 0.8 - 50 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 10 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VI-a). As the base, for example, inorganic bases such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide and the like, basic salts such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, calcium carbonate, sodium hydrogencarbonate and the like, aromatic amines such as pyridine, lutidine and the like, tertiary amines such as triethylamine, tripropylamine, tributylamine, cyclohexyldimethylamine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, N-methylpiperidine, N-methylpyrrolidine, N-methylmorpholine and the like, alkali metal hydrides such as sodium hydride, potassium hydride and the like, metal amides such as sodium amide, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hexamethyldisilazide and the like, metal alkoxides such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium tert-butoxide etc., and the like can be mentioned. The base is used in an amount of about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 2.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VI-a). This reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers

(e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like),
5 amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), nitriles (e.g., acetonitrile, propionitrile and the like), sulfoxides (e.g.,
10 dimethyl sulfoxide and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. The reaction time is generally 30 min - 48 hr, preferably 30 min - 6 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -20°C - 200°C, preferably -10°C - 150°C.

15 Compound (VIII), wherein L is halogen atom and as the halogen atom for L, for example, fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine and the like can be mentioned, can be produced by reacting compound (VII) with a halogenating agent. As the halogenating agent, for example, phosphorus halides such as
20 phosphorus trichloride, phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus pentachloride, phosphorus tribromide, phosphorus triiodide and the like, succinimides such as N-bromosuccinimide, N-iodosuccinimide and the like, halogens such as chlorine, bromine, iodine, iodine(I) fluoride, iodine(I) chloride and the
25 like, thionyl chloride, and mixtures thereof can be mentioned. The halogenating agent is used in an amount of about 1.0 - 100 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 10 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VII). To promote the reaction, the reaction can be carried out in the presence of a base. As the base, for example, inorganic bases
30 such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide and the like, basic salts such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, calcium carbonate, sodium hydrogencarbonate etc., and the like can be mentioned. This reaction is advantageously carried out without solvent or using

a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), nitriles (e.g., acetonitrile, propionitrile and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like), acid anhydrides (e.g., acetic anhydride and the like), organic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, methanesulfonic acid and the like), inorganic acids (e.g., sulfuric acid and the like), water or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. The reaction time is generally 10 min - 50 hr, preferably 30 min - 12 hr. The reaction temperature is generally 0°C - 200°C, preferably 10°C - 100°C.

The amino group of compound (VIII) may be protected with a protecting group when desired. As the protecting group, a group represented by P^2 or P^3 [wherein P^2 and P^3 are the same or different and each is i) a hydrogen atom, ii) formyl, or iii) C_{1-6} alkyl-carbonyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl and the like), benzoyl, C_{1-6} alkoxy-carbonyl (e.g., methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl (Boc) and the like), allyloxycarbonyl (Alloc), phenoxycarbonyl, fluorenylmethyloxycarbonyl (Fmoc), C_{7-10} aralkyl-carbonyl (e.g., benzylcarbonyl and the like), C_{7-10} aralkyloxy-carbonyl (e.g., benzyloxycarbonyl (Z) and the like), C_{7-10} aralkyl (e.g., benzyl and the like), trityl, phthaloyl or N,N-dimethylaminomethylene, each optionally having substituent(s), and the like. As the

substituent, 1 to 3 substituents selected from phenyl, a halogen atom (e.g., fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine and the like), C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl (e.g., methylcarbonyl, ethylcarbonyl, butylcarbonyl and the like), nitro and the like can be mentioned], and the like can be mentioned. The protecting group can be introduced by a method known per se, for example, the method described in Wiley-Interscience, 1999 "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 3rd Ed." (by Theodora W. Greene, Peter G. M. Wuts) and the like.

Compound (VI-b) can be produced by reacting compound (VIII) with thioamide (IX'). The reaction is generally carried out in the presence of a base. As the base, for example, inorganic bases such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide and the like, basic salts such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, calcium carbonate, sodium hydrogencarbonate and the like, aromatic amines such as pyridine, lutidine and the like, tertiary amines such as triethylamine, tripropylamine, tributylamine, cyclohexyldimethylamine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, N-methylpiperidine, N-methylpyrrolidine, N-methylmorpholine and the like, alkali metal hydrides such as sodium hydride, potassium hydride and the like, metal amides such as sodium amide, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hexamethyldisilazide and the like, metal alkoxides such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium tert-butoxide etc., and the like can be mentioned. In addition, the reaction can also be promoted using a metal catalyst. As the metal catalyst, a metal complex having various ligands can be used and, for example, palladium compound [e.g.: palladium(II) acetate, tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0), dichlorobis(triethylphosphine)palladium(II), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0), [2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl] palladium(II) chloride, a complex of palladium(II) acetate and 1,1'-

bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene, and the like], nickel compound [e.g.: tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)nickel(0), bis(triethylphosphine)nickel(II) chloride, bis(triphenylphosphine)nickel(II) chloride and the like],
5 rhodium compound [e.g.: tris(triphenylphosphine)rhodium(III) chloride and the like], cobalt compound, copper compound [e.g.: copper oxide, copper(II) chloride and the like], platinum compound and the like can be mentioned. Of these, palladium compound, nickel compound and copper compound are preferable.
10 The amount of thioamide (IX') to be used is about 0.8 - 10 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 3.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VIII). The amount of the base to be used is about 1.0 - 20 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VIII). The amount of the metal catalyst to be used is about 0.000001 -
15 5 mol, preferably about 0.0001 - 1 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VIII). When a metal catalyst unstable to oxygen is used in this reaction, for example, the reaction is preferably carried out in an inert gas stream of argon gas, nitrogen gas and the like. This reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent
20 inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether,
25 tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like),
30 halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), nitriles (e.g., acetonitrile, propionitrile and the like), esters (e.g., methyl acetate, ethyl acetate, butyl acetate and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like), sulfolane,

hexamethylphosphoramide, water and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. The reaction temperature is -10°C - 250°C , preferably 0°C - 150°C . While the reaction time varies depending on compound (VIII), thioamide (IX'), the base, 5 metal catalyst, the kind of the solvent, the reaction temperature and the like, it is generally 10 min - 100 hr, preferably 30 min - 50 hr.

Compound (VI-d) can be produced by aldol condensation reaction of compound (VI) with an aldehyde or ketone derivative 10 to give compound (VI-c), then subjecting compound (VI-c) to a reduction reaction. Aldol condensation reaction is performed by a condensation of compound (VI) and an aldehyde or ketone derivative represented by the formula $\text{R}^{7a}\text{COR}^{7b}$ wherein R^{7a} and R^{7b} are the same or different and each is a hydrogen atom, a 15 hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s), or a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s), in the presence of a base to give compound (VI-c) as a single configuration isomer of E isomer or Z isomer or a mixture of E and Z isomers. The amount of the aldehyde or ketone derivative 20 to be used is about 1.0 - 50 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VI). As the base, for example, inorganic bases such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide and the like, basic salts such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, calcium 25 carbonate, sodium hydrogencarbonate and the like, aromatic amines such as pyridine, lutidine and the like, tertiary amines such as triethylamine, tripropylamine, tributylamine, cyclohexyldimethylamine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, N-methylpiperidine, N-methylpyrrolidine, N- 30 methylmorpholine and the like, alkali metal hydrides such as sodium hydride, potassium hydride and the like, metal amides such as sodium amide, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hexamethyldisilazide and the like, metal alkoxides such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium tert-butoxide etc.,

and the like can be mentioned. The amount of the base to be used is about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 2.5 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VI). In addition, basically-processed alumina (e.g., ICN Alumina B manufactured by ICN, Akt.1 and the like) and the like can also be used as a base. The amount of the alumina to be used is about 1 g - 500 g, preferably about 5 g - 100 g, per 1 g of compound (VI). This reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), nitriles (e.g., acetonitrile, propionitrile and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. The reaction time is generally 30 min - 48 hr, preferably 30 min - 5 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -78°C - 200°C, preferably -10°C - 150°C. In addition, the compound can also be produced by dehydrating an aldol type intermediate obtained in the presence of a base such as lithium diisopropylamide and the like, in the presence of an acid catalyst such as p-toluenesulfonic acid and the like at room temperature to under heating.

The reduction reaction can be generally carried out using a reducing agent according to a conventional method. As the reducing agent, for example, metal hydrides such as aluminum hydride, diisobutylaluminum hydride, tributyltin hydride and the

like, metal hydride complex compounds such as sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, sodium borohydride, lithium aluminum hydride and the like, borane complexes such as borane tetrahydrofuran complex, borane dimethyl sulfide complex and the like, alkylboranes such as hexylborane, disiamylborane and the like, diborane, metals such as zinc, aluminum, tin, iron and the like, alkali metal (e.g., sodium, lithium etc.)/liquid ammonia (Birch reduction), and the like can be mentioned. The amount of the reducing agent to be used is appropriately determined according to the kind of the reducing agent. For example, the amount of the metal hydride, the metal hydride complex compound, the borane complex, the alkylborane or the diborane to be used is about 0.25 - 10 mol, preferably about 0.5 - 5 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VI-c). The amount of the metals (including alkali metal to be used in Birch reduction) to be used is about 1.0 - 20 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VI-c). This reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), organic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propanoic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, methanesulfonic acid and the like), water and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be

used, it is generally 10 min - 100 hr, preferably 30 min - 50 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -20°C - 100°C, preferably 0°C - 80°C.

In addition, compound (VI-c) can also be reduced by a hydrogenation reaction. In the case of hydrogenation reaction, for example, a catalyst such as palladium carbon, platinum(IV) oxide, Raney nickel, Raney cobalt etc., and the like are used. The amount of the catalyst to be used is about 1.0 - 2000 wt%, preferably about 10 - 300 wt%, relative to compound (VI-c).

Various hydrogen sources can also be used instead of gaseous hydrogen. As the "hydrogen source", formic acid, ammonium formate, triethylammonium formate, sodium phosphinate, hydrazine and the like are used. The amount of the hydrogen source to be used is about 1.0 - 10 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VI-c). This reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent inert to the reaction. For example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), organic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, methanesulfonic acid and the like), esters (e.g., methyl acetate, ethyl acetate, butyl acetate and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. The reaction time is generally 10 min - 50 hr, preferably 30 min - 24 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -20°C - 150°C, preferably 0°C - 80°C. While the reaction time varies depending on the kind and amount of the

reducing agent and the activity and amount of the catalyst to be used, it is generally 30 min - 100 hr, preferably 1 hr - 50 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -20°C - 120°C, preferably 0°C - 80°C. When gaseous hydrogen is used, the pressure of hydrogen is generally 1 - 100 atm.

An aldehyde or ketone derivative represented by the formula $R^{7a}COR^{7b}$ can be easily obtained from commercially available ones, or can also be produced by a method known per se, or a method analogous thereto.

Compound (XI-a) wherein m is 1 can be produced by reacting carbanion, produced by treating nitrile with a base, with compound (VI) to give compound (IX), then subjecting compound (IX) to a dehydration reaction. Compound (XI-a) can be obtained as a single isomer or a mixture of isomers. As the nitrile, for example, a compound represented by the formula R^5-CH_2CN can be mentioned. The nitrile is used in an amount of about 1.0 - 10 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 1.5 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VI). As the base, for example, metal alkoxides such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium tert-butoxide and the like, alkali metal hydrides such as sodium hydride, potassium hydride and the like, metal amides such as sodium amide, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hexamethyldisilazide etc., and the like can be mentioned. A base is used in an amount of about 1.0 - 10 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 1.5 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VI). This reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-

dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable.

5 While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be used, it is generally 30 min - 48 hr, preferably 30 min - 5 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -78°C - 100°C, preferably -78°C - 50°C.

As the catalyst to be used in the dehydration reaction,
10 for example, acidic catalysts such as inorganic acids (e.g., hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, nitric acid, hydrobromic acid, phosphoric acid and the like), organic acids (e.g., acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, oxalic acid, phthalic acid, fumaric acid, tartaric acid, maleic acid, citric acid, succinic acid,
15 methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, 10-camphorsulfonic acid and the like), boron trifluoride ether complex and the like, basic catalysts such as inorganic bases (e.g., sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide and the like), basic salts (e.g., sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate,
20 cesium carbonate, calcium carbonate, sodium hydrogencarbonate and the like), and the like can be mentioned, further, for example, dehydrating agents such as diphosphorus pentaoxide, phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus pentachloride, triphenylphosphine, phosgene, N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide,
25 alumina, sodium dioxide, thionyl chloride, methanesulfonyl chloride, trifluoroacetic anhydride and the like can be used. This reaction is advantageously carried out without solvent or using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for
30 example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the

like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be used, it is generally 30 min - 24 hr, preferably 30 min - 5 hr. The reaction temperature is generally 0°C - 200°C, preferably 0°C - 150°C.

The nitrile derivative represented by the formula R^5-CH_2CN may be a commercially available product, or can also be produced by a method known per se, or a method analogous thereto.

Compound (XI-a) wherein m is 1 can also be produced by reacting phosphonate carbanion, produced by treating alkylphosphonic acid diester with a base, with compound (VI). Compound (XI-a) can be obtained as a single isomer or a mixture of isomers. As the alkylphosphonic acid diester, for example, diethyl cyanomethylphosphonate, diethyl (1-cyanoethyl)phosphonate and the like are used. The alkylphosphonic acid diester is used in an amount of about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 2.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VI). As the base, for example, metal alkoxides such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium tert-butoxide and the like, alkali metal hydrides such as sodium hydride, potassium hydride and the like, metal amides such as sodium amide, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hexamethyldisilazide etc., and the like can be mentioned. The base is used in an amount of about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 1.5 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VI). This reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-

propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be used, it is generally 30 min - 50 hr, preferably 1 hr - 10 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -78°C - 200°C, preferably 0°C - 150°C.

Compound (X) can be produced by treating compound (VI) with trimethylsilyl cyanide in the presence of a Lewis acid and eliminating the resulting trimethylsilyloxy group with an acid. As the Lewis acid, for example, zinc iodide, anhydrous aluminum chloride, anhydrous zinc chloride, anhydrous iron chloride, boron trifluoride ether complex and the like can be mentioned. The Lewis acid is used in an amount of about 0.01 - 10 mol, preferably about 0.01 - 1.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VI). This reaction is advantageously carried out without solvent or using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent

thereof and the like are preferable. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be used, it is generally 10 min - 12 hr, preferably 30 min - 3 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -10°C - 200°C, preferably -10°C - 100°C.

As the acid to be used for elimination of trimethylsilyloxy group, for example, inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, nitric acid, hydrobromic acid, phosphoric acid and the like, organic acids such as acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, oxalic acid, phthalic acid, fumaric acid, tartaric acid, maleic acid, citric acid, succinic acid, methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, 10-camphorsulfonic acid and the like, boron trifluoride ether complex and the like can be mentioned. The acid is used in an amount of about 1 - 100 mol, preferably about 1 - 10 mol, per 1 mol of compound (VI). This reaction is advantageously carried out without solvent or using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be used, it is generally 30 min - 12 hr, preferably 30 min - 5 hr. The reaction temperature is generally 0°C - 200°C, preferably 20°C - 150°C.

Compound (XI-b) wherein m is 2 can be produced by
subjecting compound (XI-a) to a known carbon chain extension
reaction or a reaction analogous thereto. For example, a cyano
group is converted to a carboxy group by hydrolysis under
5 alkaline or acidic conditions, or the carboxy group is led to an
ester form, the obtained compound is subjected to a reduction
reaction to give an alcohol compound, then the alcohol compound
is subjected to a halogenation, a cyanation reaction and the
like.

10 Compound (XII) can be produced as a single isomer or a
mixture of isomers by subjecting compound (X), compound (XI-a)
or compound (XI-b) to a reduction reaction. As the reducing
agent, for example, metal hydrides such as aluminum hydride,
diisobutylaluminum hydride and the like, metal hydride complex
15 compounds such as lithium aluminum hydride, sodium borohydride
and the like can be mentioned and, as the hydrogenation
catalyst, for example, a catalyst such as Raney nickel, Raney
cobalt etc., and the like can be mentioned. When the reducing
agent is metal hydride, for example, about 1.0 - 10 mol,
20 preferably about 1.0 - 3.0 mol, is used per 1 mol of compound
(X), compound (XI-a) or compound (XI-b). When the reducing
agent is a metal hydride complex compound, about 1.0 - 10 mol,
preferably about 1.0 - 3.0 mol, is used per 1 mol of compound
(X), compound (XI-a) or compound (XI-b). For hydrogenation, a
25 catalyst such as Raney nickel, Raney cobalt and the like is used
in an amount of about 10 - 5000 wt%, preferably about 100 - 2000
wt%, relative to compound (X), compound (XI-a) or compound (XI-
b). This reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent
inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly
30 limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents
such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-
propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g.,
diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether,
tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like),

aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like),
5 esters (e.g., methyl acetate, ethyl acetate, butyl acetate and the like), organic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, methanesulfonic acid and the like), water and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. When Raney nickel or Raney cobalt
10 catalyst is used, amine such as ammonia and the like may be added to suppress the side reaction. While the reaction time varies depending on activity and amount of catalyst to be used, it is generally 30 min - 200 hr, preferably 1 hr - 50 hr. The reaction temperature is generally 0°C - 120°C, preferably 20°C -
15 80°C. When the catalyst such as Raney nickel, Raney cobalt and the like is used, the pressure of hydrogen is generally 1 - 100 atm.

Compound (I) can be produced by reacting compound (XII) with a carboxylic acid, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative
20 thereof, or an isocyanate. As the carboxylic acid, for example, a compound represented by the formula $R^1\text{-COOH}$ can be mentioned. As the reactive derivative of the carboxylic acid, for example, acid halides such as acid chloride, acid bromide and the like, acid amides with pyrazole, imidazole, benzotriazole and the
25 like, acid anhydrides such as acetic anhydride, propionic anhydride, butyric anhydride and the like, acid azides, active esters such as diethoxyphosphoric acid ester, diphenoxyphosphoric acid ester, p-nitrophenyl ester, 2,4-dinitrophenyl ester, cyanomethyl ester, pentachlorophenyl ester,
30 ester with N-hydroxysuccinimide, ester with N-hydroxyphthalimide, ester with 1-hydroxybenzotriazole, ester with 6-chloro-1-hydroxybenzotriazole, ester with 1-hydroxy-1H-2-pyridone and the like, active thioesters such as 2-pyridyl thioester, 2-benzothiazolyl thioester etc., and the like can be

mentioned. Instead of using the reactive derivative, the carboxylic acid or a salt thereof may be directly reacted with compound (XII) in the presence of a suitable condensation agent. As the condensation agent, for example, N,N'-disubstituted carbodiimides such as N,N'-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide, 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide (WSC) hydrochloride and the like, azolides such as N,N'-carbonyldiimidazole and the like, dehydrating agents such as N-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethoxy-1,2-dihydroquinoline, phosphorus oxychloride, alkoxyacetylene and the like, 2-halogenopyridinium salts such as 2-chloromethylpyridinium iodide, 2-fluoro-1-methylpyridinium iodide etc., and the like can be mentioned. When the condensation agent is used, the reaction is considered to proceed via a reactive derivative of carboxylic acid. As the isocyanate, for example, a compound represented by the formula R^1-NCO can be mentioned. The carboxylic acid, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, or the isocyanate is used in an amount of generally about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 2.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (XII). This reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), nitriles (e.g., acetonitrile, propionitrile and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like), aromatic organic bases (e.g., pyridine, lutidine and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. When an acidic

substance is released by the reaction, the reaction can be carried out in the presence of a deacidifying agent to remove the substance from the reaction system. As the deacidifying agent, for example, basic salts such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, calcium carbonate, sodium hydrogencarbonate and the like, organic bases such as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, tributylamine, cyclohexyldimethylamine, pyridine, lutidine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, N-methylpiperidine, N-methylpyrrolidine, N-methylmorpholine, 1,5-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]-5-nonene, 1,4-diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]-7-undecene etc., and the like are used. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be used, it is generally 10 min - 24 hr, preferably 30 min - 4 hr. The reaction temperature is generally 0°C - 100°C, preferably 0°C - 70°C.

Compound (I) can be produced by subjecting compound (XII) to carbonation reaction. The carbonation reaction can be carried out by a known method, for example, the method described in "Shin Jikken Kagaku Koza (New Experimental Chemistry Course)", Vol. 14, 15, pp. 230-239 (edited by the Chemical Society of Japan) and the like, or a method analogous thereto.

A carboxylic acid represented by the formula $R^1\text{-COOH}$, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof, or an isocyanate represented by the formula $R^1\text{-NCO}$ may be a commercially available product, or can also be produced by a method known per se, or a method analogous thereto.

A single isomer of compound (I) or a mixture of isomers of compound (I) can be converted to a different single isomer or a mixture of isomers at different ratio by a heat treatment, a treatment with an acid or a treatment with a base. As the acid, for example, inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, nitric acid, hydrobromic acid, phosphoric acid and the like, organic acids such as acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid,

oxalic acid, phthalic acid, fumaric acid, tartaric acid, maleic acid, citric acid, succinic acid, methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, 10-camphorsulfonic acid and the like, boron trifluoride ether complex and the like can be mentioned.

5 As the base, for example, inorganic bases such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide and the like, basic salts such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, calcium carbonate, sodium hydrogencarbonate and the like, organic bases such as triethylamine,
10 diisopropylethylamine, tributylamine, cyclohexyldimethylamine, pyridine, lutidine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, N-methylpiperidine, N-methylpyrrolidine, N-methylmorpholine, 1,5-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]-5-nonene, 1,4-diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]-7-undecene
15 and the like, metal alkoxides such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium tert-butoxide and the like, alkali metal hydrides such as sodium hydride, potassium hydride and the like, metal amides such as sodium amide, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hexamethyldisilazide and the like, organic lithiums such
20 as methyllithium, n-butyllithium, sec-butyllithium, tert-butyllithium etc., and the like can be mentioned. The acid or the base is used in an amount of about 0.01 - 100 mol, preferably about 0.01 to 5.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (I). This reaction is advantageously carried out without solvent or
25 using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether,
30 tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like),

halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), water and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be used, it is generally 10 min - 100 hr, preferably 30 min - 24 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -10°C - 200°C, preferably -10°C - 150°C.

When a compound (I) wherein the double bond moiety is reduced is to be produced, the compound can be produced by subjecting the double bond moiety of compound (I) to a reduction reaction. The reduction reaction is generally carried out using a reducing agent according to a conventional method. As the reducing agent, for example, metal hydrides such as aluminum hydride, diisobutylaluminum hydride, tributyltin hydride and the like, metal hydride complex compounds such as sodium cyanoborohydride, sodium triacetoxymborohydride, sodium borohydride, lithium aluminum hydride and the like, borane complexes such as borane tetrahydrofuran complex, borane dimethyl sulfide complex and the like, alkylboranes such as hexylborane, disiamylborane and the like, diborane, metals such as zinc, aluminum, tin, iron and the like, alkali metal (e.g., sodium, lithium etc.)/liquid ammonia (Birch reduction) and the like can be mentioned. The amount of the reducing agent to be used is appropriately determined according to the kind of the reducing agent. For example, the metal hydride, the metal hydride complex compound, the borane complex, the alkylborane or the diborane is used in an amount of about 0.25 - 10 mol, preferably about 0.5 - 5 mol, per 1 mol of compound (I). The metals (including alkali metal to be used in Birch reduction) are used in an amount of about 1.0 - 20 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (I). This reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g.,

methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g.,
5 benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-
10 dichloroethane and the like), organic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, methanesulfonic acid and the like), water and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be
15 used, it is generally 10 min - 100 hr, preferably 30 min - 50 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -20°C - 100°C, preferably 0°C - 80°C.

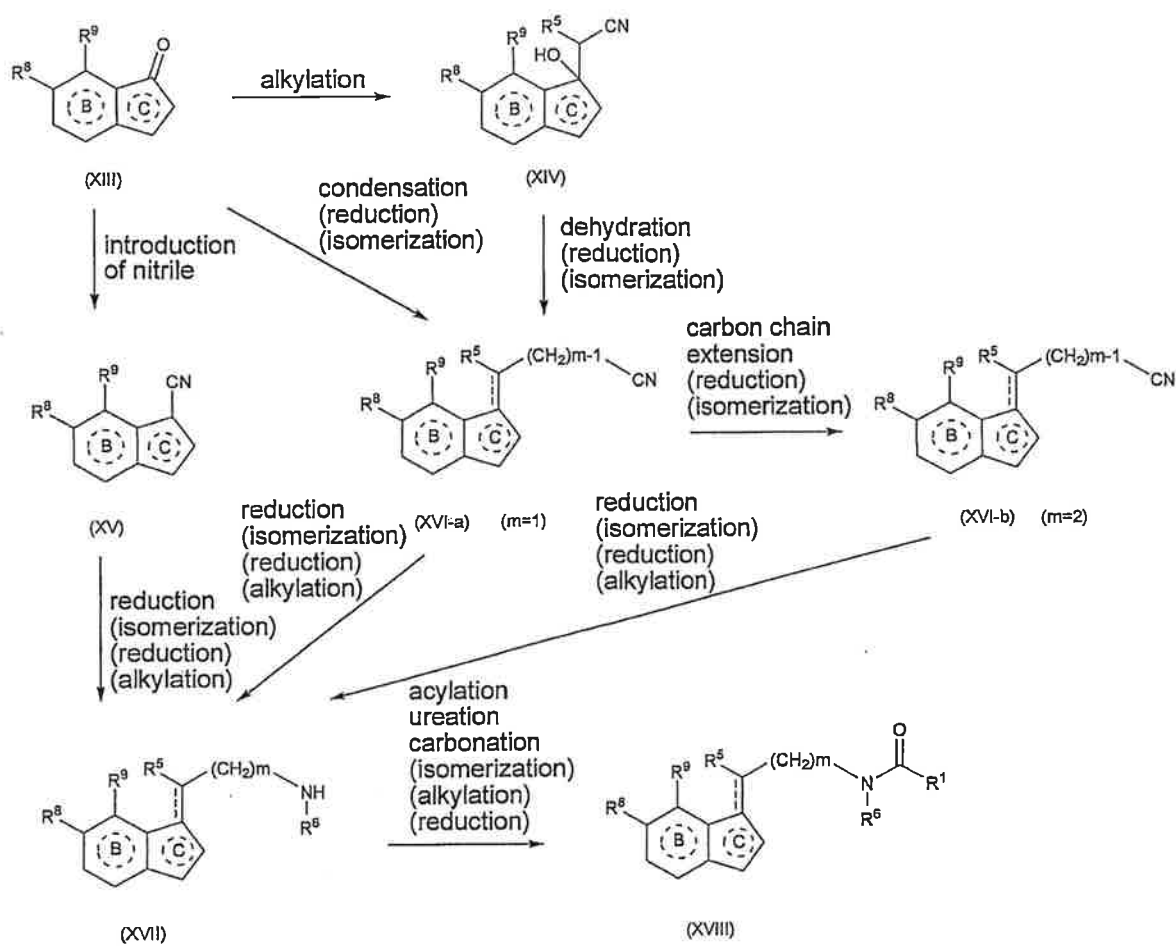
In addition, the double bond moiety can be reduced by subjecting compound (I) to a hydrogenation reaction. For
20 hydrogenation reaction, for example, a catalyst such as palladium carbon, platinum(IV) oxide, Raney nickel, Raney cobalt etc., and the like is used. The catalyst is used in an amount of about 1.0 - 2000 wt%, preferably about 10 - 300 wt%, relative to compound (I). Various hydrogen sources can also be used
25 instead of gaseous hydrogen. As the hydrogen source, for example, formic acid, ammonium formate, triethylammonium formate, sodium phosphinate, hydrazine and the like are used. The hydrogen source is used in an amount of about 1.0 - 10 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (I). This
30 reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether,

diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-
5 dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), esters (e.g., methyl acetate, ethyl acetate, butyl acetate and the like), organic acids (e.g.,
10 formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, methanesulfonic acid and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. While the reaction time varies depending on the kind and amount of the reducing agent and the activity and amount of the catalyst to be used, it
15 is generally 30 min - 100 hr, preferably 1 hr - 50 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -20°C - 120°C, preferably 0°C - 80°C. When hydrogenation catalyst is used, the pressure of hydrogen is generally 1 - 100 atm.

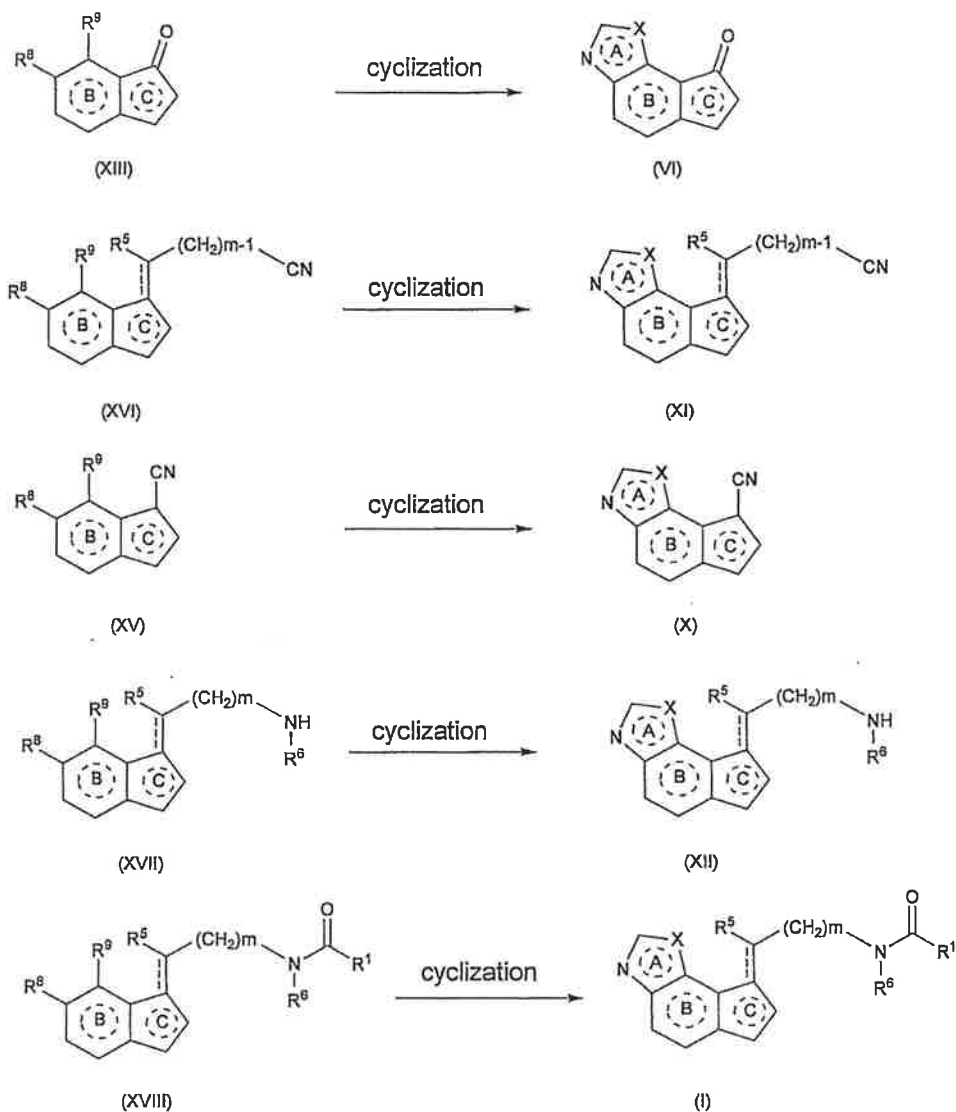
Of compounds (I), a compound wherein R⁶ is a "hydrocarbon
20 group optionally having substituent(s)" can be produced by subjecting a compound (I) wherein R⁶ is a hydrogen atom to an alkylation reaction. The alkylation reaction includes reacting a compound (I) wherein R⁶ is a hydrogen atom with a corresponding alkylating agent (e.g., alkyl halide, sulfonic acid ester of
25 alcohol and the like) in the presence of a base. The alkylating agent is used in an amount of about 0.8 - 50 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 10 mol, per 1 mol of compound (I). As the base, for example, inorganic bases such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide and the like, basic salts such as
30 sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, calcium carbonate, sodium hydrogencarbonate and the like, organic bases such as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, tributylamine, cyclohexyldimethylamine, pyridine, lutidine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, N-methylpiperidine,

N-methylpyrrolidine, N-methylmorpholine, 1,5-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]-5-nonene, 1,4-diazabicyclo[2.2.2]octane, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]-7-undecene and the like, metal alkoxides such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium tert-butoxide and the like, alkali metal hydrides such as sodium hydride, potassium hydride and the like, metal amides such as sodium amide, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hexamethyldisilazide etc., and the like can be mentioned. The base is used in an amount of about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 2.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (I). This reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), nitriles (e.g., acetonitrile, propionitrile and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like) and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be used, it is generally 30 min - 48 hr, preferably 30 min - 6 hr. The reaction temperature is generally -20°C - 200°C, preferably -10°C - 150°C.

(Reaction 2)



(Reaction 3)



Compound (XVI-a) wherein m is 1 can be produced by reacting carbanion, produced by treating nitrile with a base, with compound (XIII) to give compound (XIV), and then subjecting compound (XIV) to a dehydration reaction. Compound (XIII) collectively shows compound (III) [$R^8:-NO_2$, $R^9:-O-P^1$], compound (IV) [$R^8:-NH_2$, $R^9:-O-P^1$], compound (V) [$R^8:-NH-C(O)-R^3$, $R^9:-OH$] and compound (VIII) [$R^8:-NP^2P^3$, $R^9:-L$], wherein each symbol is as defined above. Compound (XVI-a) is obtained as a single isomer or a mixture of isomers. The alkylation reaction and dehydration reaction can be carried out by a method similar to the method for producing compound (XI-a) from compound (VI).

Compound (XVI-a) can also be produced by subjecting phosphonate carbanion, produced by treating alkylphosphonic acid diester with a base, and compound (XIII) to a condensation reaction. The condensation reaction can be carried out by a method similar to the method for producing compound (XI-a) from compound (VI).

Compound (XVI-b) wherein m is 2 can be produced by subjecting compound (XVI-a) to a known carbon chain extension reaction or a reaction analogous thereto. The reaction can be carried out by a method similar to the method for producing compound (XI-b) from compound (XI-a).

Compound (XV) can be produced by treating compound (XIII) with trimethylsilyl cyanide in the presence of a Lewis acid, and eliminating the resulting trimethylsilyloxy group with an acid. The reaction can be carried out by a method similar to the method for producing compound (X) from compound (VI).

Compound (XVII) can be produced as a single isomer or a mixture of isomers by subjecting compound (XV), compound (XVI-a) or compound (XVI-b) to a reduction reaction. The reduction reaction can be carried out by a method similar to the method for producing compound (XII) from compound (X), compound (XI-a) or compound (XI-b).

Compound (XVIII) can be produced by reacting compound (XVII) with a carboxylic acid, a salt thereof or a reactive derivative thereof or an isocyanate or a carbonating agent. The acylation reaction, ureation reaction and carbonation reaction can be carried out by a method similar to the method for producing compound (I) from compound (XII).

Compounds (XI-a), (XI-b), (XII), (XVI-a), (XVI-b), (XVII) and (XVIII) can be converted to a different single isomer, or a mixture of isomers at different ratio by a method similar to the method for isomerizing compound (I).

Compound (XI-a), (XI-b), (XII), (XVI-a), (XVI-b), (XVII) or (XVIII), wherein the double bond moiety is reduced, can be

produced by a method similar to the method for subjecting the double bond moiety of compound (I) to a reduction reaction.

Compound (XVIII) wherein R⁶ is a "hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s)" can be produced by subjecting
5 compound (XVIII) wherein R⁶ is a hydrogen atom to an alkylation reaction. The alkylation reaction can be carried out by a method similar to the method for producing compound (I) wherein R⁶ is a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s) from compound (I) wherein R⁶ is a hydrogen atom.

10 Compound (VI) can be produced by subjecting compound (XIII) to a series of reaction steps including a cyclization reaction. As the series of reaction steps including a cyclization reaction, for example, a method of producing compound (VI-a) from compound (IV), a method of producing
15 compound (VI-b) from compound (VIII) and the like can be mentioned, and the reaction can be carried out by a method similar to the method of producing them.

Compound (XI) can be produced by subjecting compound (XVI) to a series of reaction steps including cyclization reaction.
20 These reactions can be carried out by a method similar to the method for producing compound (VI) from compound (XIII).

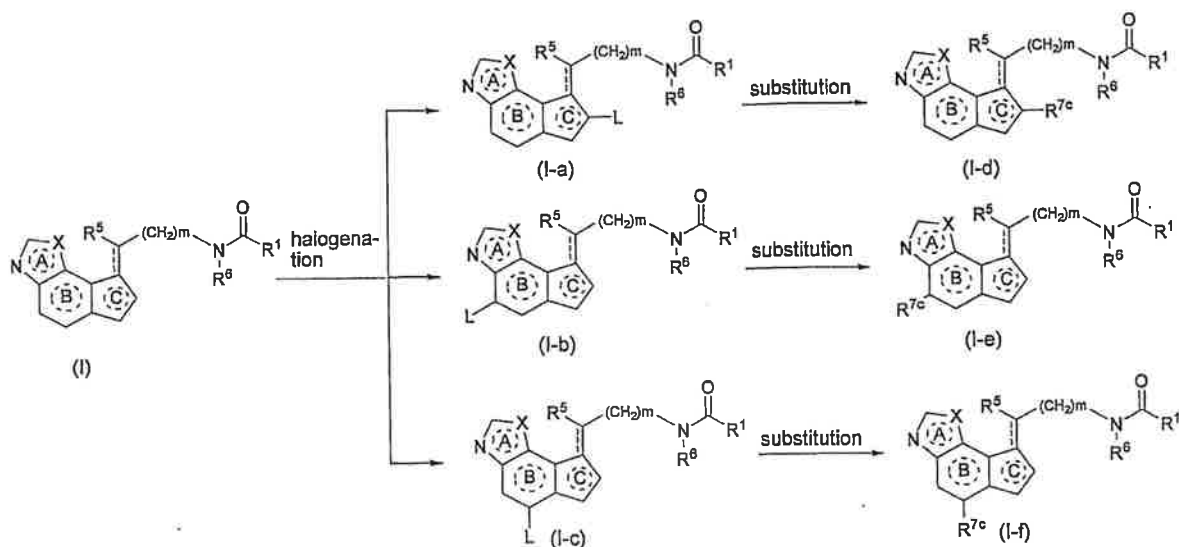
Compound (X) can be produced by subjecting compound (XV) to a series of reaction steps including cyclization reaction. These reactions can be carried out by a method similar to the
25 method for producing compound (VI) from compound (XIII).

Compound (XII) can be produced by subjecting compound (XVII) to a series of reaction steps including cyclization reaction. These reactions can be carried out by a method similar to the method for producing compound (VI) from compound
30 (XIII).

Compound (I) can be produced by subjecting compound (XVIII) to a series of reaction steps including cyclization reaction. These reactions can be carried out by a method

similar to the method for producing compound (VI) from compound (XIII).

(Reaction 4)



5

Compound (I-d) can be produced by reacting compound (I) with a halogenating agent to give compound (I-a), and then subjecting compound (I-a) to a condensation reaction. As the halogenating agent, for example, phosphorus halide such as phosphorus trichloride, phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus pentachloride, phosphorus tribromide, phosphorus triiodide and the like, succinimides such as N-bromosuccinimide, N-iodosuccinimide and the like, halogens such as chlorine, bromine, iodine, iodine(I) fluoride, iodine(I) chloride and the like, thionyl chloride, and mixtures thereof and the like can be mentioned. The halogenating agent is used in an amount of about 1.0 - 100 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 10 mol, per 1 mol of compound (I). To promote the reaction, the reaction can be carried out in the presence of a base. As the base, for example, inorganic bases such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide and the like, basic salts such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, calcium carbonate, sodium hydrogencarbonate etc., and the like can be mentioned. This reaction is advantageously carried out without

20

solvent or using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like), aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), nitriles (e.g., acetonitrile, propionitrile and the like), sulfoxides (e.g., dimethyl sulfoxide and the like), acid anhydrides (e.g., acetic anhydride and the like), organic acids (e.g., formic acid, acetic acid, propionic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, methanesulfonic acid and the like), inorganic acids (e.g., sulfuric acid and the like), water and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are preferable. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be used, it is generally 10 min - 50 hr, preferably 30 min - 12 hr. The reaction temperature is generally 0°C - 200°C, preferably 10°C - 100°C.

The condensation reaction can be carried out by reacting compound (I-a) with an organic boronic acid or an organic boronic acid ester in the presence of a metal catalyst. As the organic boronic acid or the organic boronic acid ester, for example, a compound represented by the formula $R^{7c}-M$ wherein R^{7c} is a hydrocarbon group optionally having substituent(s) or a heterocyclic group optionally having substituent(s), and M is a boron atom moiety of the organic boronic acid or the organic boronic acid ester, can be mentioned. As the M, for example, dihydroxyboranyl group, 4,4,5,5-tetramethyl-1,3,2-dioxaborolan-2-yl group and the like are preferable. As the metal catalyst,

palladium compounds [e.g.: palladium(II) acetate, tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium(0), dichlorobis(triethylphosphine)palladium(II), tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0),

5 [2,2'-bis(diphenylphosphino)-1,1'-binaphthyl] palladium(II) chloride, a complex of palladium(II) acetate and 1,1'-bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene and the like] are preferable. The reaction is generally carried out in the presence of a base. As the base, for example, inorganic bases such as sodium

10 hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, magnesium hydroxide and the like, basic salts such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, calcium carbonate, sodium hydrogencarbonate etc., and the like can be mentioned. The organic boronic acid or the organic boronic acid ester is used in an amount of about

15 0.1 - 10 mol, preferably about 0.8 - 2.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (I-a). The metal catalyst is used in an amount of about 0.000001 to 5.0 mol, preferably about 0.0001 - 1.0 mol, per 1 mol of compound (I-a). The base is used in an amount of about 1.0 - 20 mol, preferably about 1.0 - 5.0 mol, per 1 mol of

20 compound (I-a). When a metal catalyst unstable to oxygen is used in these reactions, for example, the reaction is preferably carried out in an inert gas stream of argon gas, nitrogen gas and the like. This reaction is advantageously performed using a solvent inert to the reaction. While the solvent is not

25 particularly limited as long as the reaction proceeds, for example, solvents such as alcohols (e.g., methanol, ethanol, 1-propanol, 2-propanol, tert-butyl alcohol and the like), ethers (e.g., diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, diphenyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, 1,4-dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane and the like),

30 aromatic hydrocarbons (e.g., benzene, toluene, xylene and the like), saturated hydrocarbons (e.g., cyclohexane, hexane and the like), amides (e.g., N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide and the like), halogenated hydrocarbons (e.g., dichloromethane, chloroform,

carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane and the like), nitriles (e.g., acetonitrile, propionitrile and the like), esters (e.g., methyl acetate, ethyl acetate, butyl acetate and the like), water and the like, or a mixed solvent thereof and the like are
5 preferable. While the reaction time varies depending on the reagent and solvent to be used, it is generally 1 min - 200 hr, preferably 5 min - 100 hr. The reaction temperature is -10°C - 250°C, preferably 0°C - 150°C.

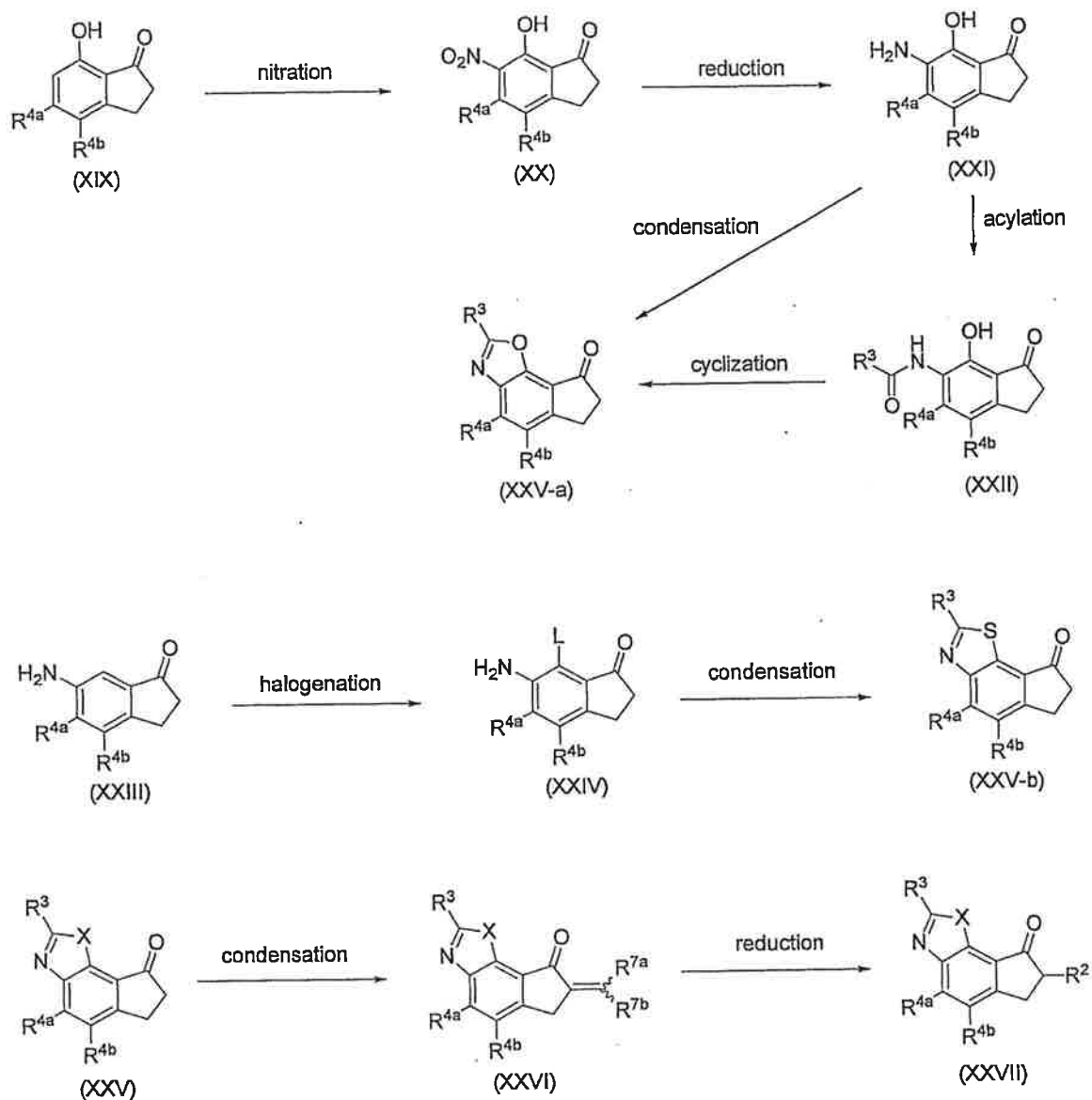
An organic boronic acid or an organic boronic acid ester
10 represented by the formula $R^{7c}-M$ may be a commercially available one, or can also be produced by a method known per se, or a method analogous thereto.

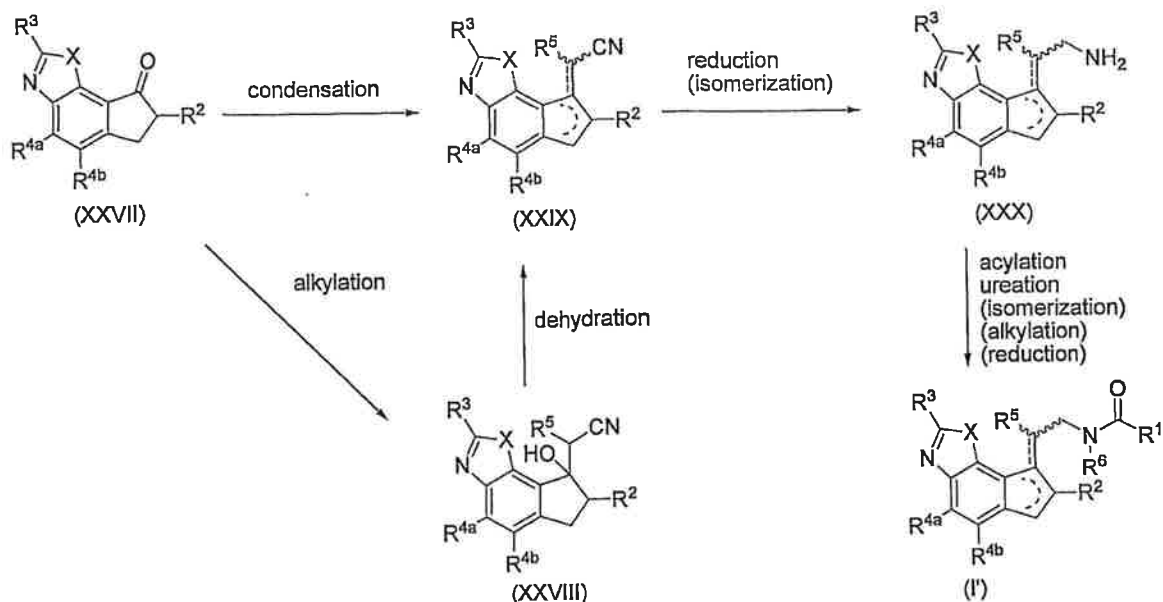
Compound (I-d) can also be produced by subjecting compound (I-a) to a desired substituent exchange reaction known per se.
15 The reaction can be carried out, for example, by the method described in "Shin Jikken Kagaku Koza (New Experimental Chemistry Course)", Vols. 14 and 15, (edited by the Chemical Society of Japan) and the like, or a method analogous thereto.

Compounds (I-e) and (I-f) can be produced by a method
20 similar to the method for producing compound (I-d) from compound (I).

Of compounds (I), a compound represented by the formula (I') or a salt thereof [hereinafter sometimes to be referred to as compound (I')] can be obtained by the method shown by the
25 following reaction schemes, or a method analogous thereto and the like.

(Reaction 5)



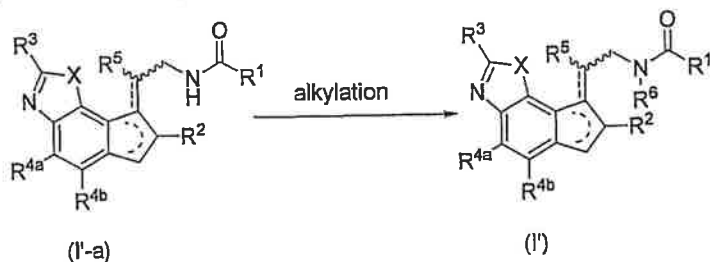


Compound (XIX) can be produced by a method similar to the method for producing compound (II). Compound (XXIII) can be produced by a method similar to the method for producing compound (VII).

Compound (XX) can be produced by a method similar to the method for producing compound (III); compound (XXI) can be produced by a method similar to the method for producing compound (IV); compound (XXII) can be produced by a method similar to the method for producing compound (V); compound (XXV-a) can be produced by a method similar to the method for producing compound (VI-a); compound (XXIV) can be produced by a method similar to the method for producing compound (VIII); compound (XXV-b) can be produced by a method similar to the method for producing compound (VI-b); compound (XXVI) can be produced by a method similar to the method for producing compound (VI-c); compound (XXVII) can be produced by a method similar to the method for producing compound (VI-d); compound (XXVIII) can be produced by a method similar to the method for producing compound (IX); compound (XXIX) can be produced by a method similar to the method for producing compound (XI-a); compound (XXX) can be produced by a method similar to the method

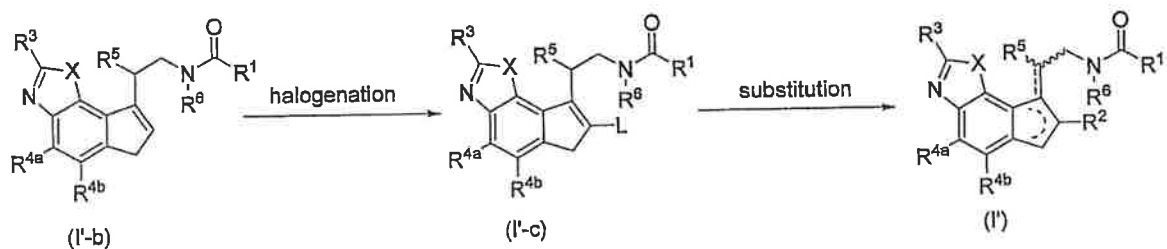
for producing compound (XII); and compound (I') can be produced by a method similar to the method for producing compound (I) from compound (XII).

5 (Reaction 6)

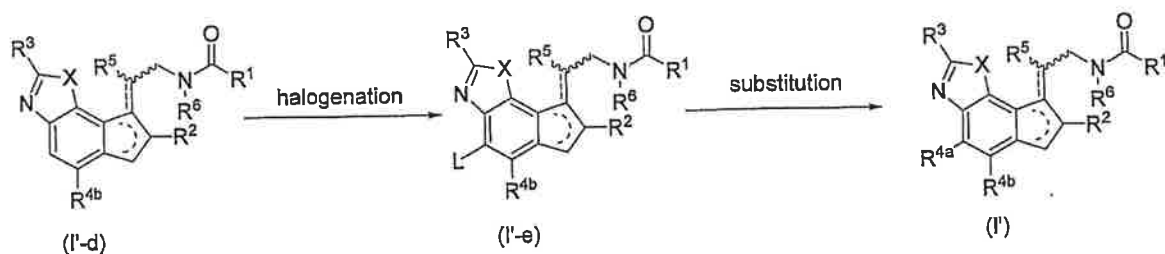


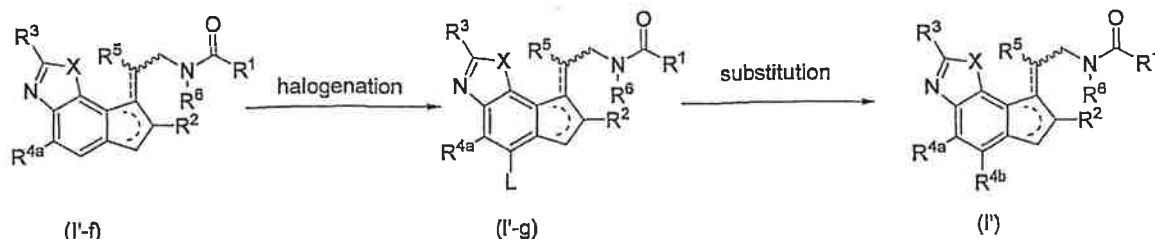
Of compounds (I'), a compound wherein R⁶ is alkyl can be produced by subjecting a compound (I'-a) wherein R⁶ is a hydrogen atom to an alkylation reaction. The alkylation reaction can be carried out in the same manner as in the alkylation reaction of compound (I) wherein R⁶ is a hydrogen atom.

(Reaction 7)



15





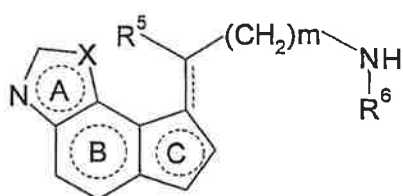
R^2 of compound (I') can be introduced by reacting compound (I'-b) wherein R^2 is a hydrogen atom with a halogenating agent to give compound (I'-c) and then subjecting compound (I'-c) to a
 5 desired substituent exchange reaction known per se.

R^{4a} of compound (I') can be introduced by reacting compound (I'-d) wherein R^{4a} is a hydrogen atom with a halogenating agent to give compound (I'-e) and then subjecting compound (I'-e) to a desired substituent exchange reaction known per se.

10 R^{4b} of compound (I') can be introduced by reacting compound (I'-f) wherein R^{4b} is a hydrogen atom with a halogenating agent to give compound (I'-g) and then subjecting compound (I'-g) to a desired substituent exchange reaction known per se.

The halogenation and substituent exchange reaction can be
 15 carried out by a method similar to the method for producing, for example, compound (I-d) from compound (I).

A compound represented by the formula



20 wherein each symbol is as defined above, or a salt thereof, which is obtained in the reaction steps for the production of the aforementioned compound (I), is a novel compound, and can be used as a starting material of the compound of the present invention. Of these, preferable compounds include
 25 2-(6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethanamine,

2-(2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethanamine,
2-[2-(4-phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene]ethanamine,
5 2-(2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-ylidene)ethanamine,
2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethanamine or an optically active form thereof or a salt thereof and the like.

10

In the aforementioned respective reactions, when the starting material compound has amino, carboxy, hydroxy or heterocyclic group, these groups may be protected by a protecting group generally used in the peptide chemistry and the like. In this case, the object compound can be obtained by removing the protecting group as necessary after the reaction. Introduction and removal of these protecting groups can be performed by a method known per se, for example, the method described in "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, 3rd Ed." (Theodora W. Greene, Peter G. M. Wuts, Wiley-Interscience, 1999) and the like.

The configuration isomers of the aforementioned compounds (II) - (XXX) can be isolated and purified by, for example, a conventional separation means such as extraction, recrystallization, distillation, chromatography and the like, when isomerization occurs, whereby a pure compound can be produced. In addition, isomerization of double bond may be promoted by heating, acid catalyst, transition metal complex, metal catalyst, radical species catalyst, photoirradiation or strong basic catalyst and the like according to the method described in Shin Jikken Kagaku Koza (New Experimental Chemistry Course), vol. 14, pp. 251-253 (edited by the Chemical Society of Japan), Jikken Kagaku Koza (Courses in Experimental Chemistry), 4th Ed., vol. 19, pp. 273-274 (edited by the Chemical Society of

Japan) and the like or a method analogous thereto, whereby a corresponding pure isomer can be obtained. While compound (I) has a stereoisomer depending on the kind of the substituent, not only the isomer itself but also a mixture thereof are

5 encompassed in the present invention. In the above-mentioned reaction steps, where desired, compound (I) can be produced by a known hydrolysis, deprotection, acylation reaction, alkylation reaction, hydrogenation reaction, oxidation reaction, reduction reaction, carbon chain extension reaction or substituent
10 exchange reaction, conducted individually or by a combination of two or more thereof. These reactions can be carried out, for example, according to the method described in Shin Jikken Kagaku Koza (New Experimental Chemistry Course), vols. 14 and 15 (edited by the Chemical Society of Japan) and the like.

15 Compound (I) can be isolated and purified by a known means, for example, phase transfer, concentration, solvent extraction, fractional distillation, liquid conversion, crystallization, recrystallization, chromatography and the like.

If compound (I) is obtained as a free compound, it can be
20 converted into a desired salt by a method known per se or a modification thereof; conversely, if compound (I) is obtained as a salt, it can be converted into a free form or another desired salt by a method known per se or a modification thereof.

25 The compound (I) may be used as a prodrug. A prodrug of the compound (I) means a compound which is converted to the compound (I) with a reaction due to an enzyme, an gastric acid, etc. under the physiological condition in the living body, that is, a compound which is converted to the compound (I) with
30 oxidation, reduction, hydrolysis, etc. according to an enzyme; a compound which is converted to the compound (I) by hydrolysis etc. due to gastric acid, etc.

A prodrug of compound (I) may be a compound obtained by subjecting an amino group in compound (I) to an acylation,

alkylation or phosphorylation (e.g., a compound obtained by
subjecting an amino group in compound (I) to an eicosanoylation,
alanylation, pentylaminocarbonylation, (5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-
dioxolen-4-yl)methoxycarbonylation, tetrahydrofuranylation,
5 pyrrolidylmethylation, pivaloyloxymethylation and tert-
butylation, etc.); a compound obtained by subjecting a hydroxy
group in compound (I) to an acylation, alkylation,
phosphorylation or boration (e.g., a compound obtained by
subjecting a hydroxy group in compound (I) to an acetylation,
10 palmitoylation, propanoylation, pivaloylation, succinylation,
fumarylation, alanylation, dimethylaminomethylcarbonylation,
etc.); a compound obtained by subjecting a carboxyl group in
compound (I) to an esterification or amidation (e.g., a compound
obtained by subjecting a carboxy group in compound (I) to an
15 ethyl esterification, phenyl esterification, carboxymethyl
esterification, dimethylaminomethyl esterification,
pivaloyloxymethyl esterification, ethoxycarbonyloxyethyl
esterification, phthalidyl esterification, (5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-
dioxolen-4-yl)methyl esterification, cyclohexyloxycarbonylethyl
20 esterification and methylamidation, etc.) and the like. Any of
these compounds can be produced from compound (I) by a method
known *per se*.

A prodrug for compound (I) may also be one which is
converted into compound (I) under a physiological condition,
25 such as those described in IYAKUHIN no KAIHATSU (Development of
Pharmaceuticals), Vol.7, Design of Molecules, p.163-198,
Published by HIROKAWA SHOTEN.

When compound (I) has isomers such as optical isomer,
stereoisomer, positional isomer, rotational isomer and the like,
30 and any isomers and mixtures are encompassed in the compound
(I). For example, when compound (I) has an optical isomer, an
optical isomer separated from a racemate is also encompassed in
the compound (I). These isomers can be obtained as independent
products by a synthesis means or a separation means (e.g.,

concentration, solvent extraction, column chromatography, recrystallization and the like), optical resolution methods (e.g., fractional recrystallization, chiral column method, diastereomer method and the like) and the like known *per se*.

5 The compound (I) may be a crystal, and both a single crystal and crystal mixtures are encompassed in the compound (I) of the present invention. Crystals can be produced by crystallization according to crystallization methods known *per se*.

10 The compound (I) may be a solvate (e.g., hydrate etc.) or a non-solvate (e.g., non-hydrate etc.), both of which are encompassed in the compound (I).

A compound labeled with an isotope (e.g., ^3H , ^{14}C , ^{35}S , ^{125}I and the like) is also encompassed in the compound (I).

15

Compound (I) shows high affinity for melatonin receptors (MT_1 receptor, MT_2 receptor). Since compound (I) acts as a melatonin agonist, has physiological activities such as melatonin receptor affinity and the like, shows low toxicity (e.g., acute toxicity, chronic toxicity, genetic toxicity, 20 reproductive toxicity, cardiotoxicity, drug interaction, carcinogenicity and the like), and is superior in the stability and in vivo kinetics (absorption, distribution, metabolism, excretion and the like), it is useful as a pharmaceutical product. Compound (I) acts as a melatonin agonist in mammals 25 (e.g., mouse, rat, hamster, rabbit, cat, dog, bovine, sheep, monkey, human and the like), is useful as a composition with a binding affinity for melatonin receptor, particularly, a melatonin receptor agonist, and can be used as a prophylactic or 30 therapeutic drug for a disease possibly influenced by melatonin. As the "disease possibly influenced by melatonin", for example, sleep disorders [e.g., intrinsic sleep disorders (e.g., psychophysiological insomnia and the like), extrinsic sleep disorders, circadian rhythm disorders (e.g., time-zone change

syndrome (jet lag), shift work sleep disorder, irregular sleep-wake pattern, delayed sleep phase syndrome, advanced sleep phase syndrome, non-24 hour sleep-wake syndrome and the like), parasomnias, sleep disorder associated with internal or psychic disorders (e.g., chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, cerebrovascular dementia, schizophrenia, depression, anxiety neurosis), insomnia and the like], neurodegenerative diseases (e.g., senile dementia, Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), Huntington's disease, spinocerebellar degeneration, multiple sclerosis (MS) and the like), psychoneurotic diseases (e.g., depression, anxiety, bipolar disorder, posttraumatic stress disorder (PTSD), seasonal melancholia, schizophrenia and the like), memory disorders (e.g., senile dementia, mild cognitive impairment (MCI), amnesia and the like), ischemic central nerve disorders (e.g., cerebral infarction, cerebral hemorrhage, brain edema and the like), central nervous system injury (e.g., head trauma, spinal cord injury, whiplash injury and the like), vascular dementia (e.g., multi-infarct dementia, Binswanger's disease and the like), cancer (e.g., cerebral tumor, pituitary adenoma, glioma, acoustic neurinoma, retina sarcoma, thyroid cancer, pharyngeal cancer, laryngeal cancer, lingual cancer, thymoma, mesothelial tumor, breast cancer, lung cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, small cell lung cancer, stomach cancer, esophageal cancer, duodenal cancer, colorectal cancer, colon cancer, rectal cancer, liver cancer, hepatocellular carcinoma, pancreatic cancer, pancreatic endocrine tumor, biliary tract cancer, gallbladder cancer, penile cancer, kidney cancer, renal pelvic cancer, ureteral cancer, renal cell cancer, testis tumor, prostate cancer, bladder cancer, vulvar cancer, uterine cancer, cancer of uterine cervix, cancer of uterine body, uterine sarcoma, chorionic disease, vaginal cancer, ovarian cancer, ovarian germ cell tumor, skin cancer, malignant melanoma,

mycosis fungoides, basal cell tumor, soft tissue sarcoma, malignant lymphoma, Hodgkin's disease, osteomyelodysplasia syndrome, multiple myeloma, leukemia, acute myelocytic leukemia, chronic myelocytic leukemia, acute lymphatic leukemia, chronic
5 lymphatic leukemia, adult T cell leukemia, chronic myeloproliferative disease, pancreatic endocrine tumor, fibrous histiocytoma, leiomyosarcoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, unknown primary cancer and the like), hyperinsulinemia, metabolic syndrome, obesity, diabetes, diabetic complications (e.g., diabetic
10 retinopathy, diabetic neuropathy, diabetic nephropathy and the like), hypertriglyceridemia (hyperlipidemia), hypertension, circulatory disease [e.g., ischemic cardiac diseases (e.g., myocardial infarction, angina pectoris and the like), cerebral apoplexy, arteriosclerosis, arterial restenosis after PTCA and
15 the like], lower urinary tract disease or disorder (e.g., dysuria, incontinence and the like), osteoporosis, reproductive and neuroendocrine diseases, convulsion, glaucoma, headache, irritable bowel syndrome and the like can be mentioned. In addition, it is effective for immunoregulation, cognitive
20 enhancement, tranquilization, stress or regulation of ovulation (e.g., contraception and the like).

Compound (I) or a prodrug thereof [sometimes to be abbreviated as "the compound of the present invention"] can be safely administered orally or parenterally (e.g., subcutaneous,
25 topical, rectal, intravenous administrations etc.) by itself, or in the form of a pharmaceutical composition containing a pharmacologically acceptable carrier according to a conventional method (e.g., the method described in the Japanese Pharmacopoeia etc.), such as tablet (including sugar-coated tablet, film-
30 coated tablet and the like), powder, granule, capsule, liquid, emulsion, suspension, injection, suppository, sustained-release preparation (e.g., sublingual tablet, microcapsule etc.), plaster, orally disintegrating tablet, orally disintegrating film and the like.

As pharmacologically acceptable carriers, various organic or inorganic carrier substances conventionally used as preparation materials can be mentioned. For example, suitable amounts of additives such as excipient, lubricant, binder and disintegrant for solid preparations, or solvent, solubilizing agent, suspending agent, isotonicity agent, buffer and soothing agent for liquid preparations, and where necessary, conventional preservative, antioxidant, coloring agent, sweetening agent, adsorbent, wetting agent and the like can be used appropriately.

As the excipient, for example, lactose, sucrose, D-mannitol, starch, cornstarch, crystalline cellulose, light anhydrous silicic acid and the like can be mentioned. As the lubricant, for example, magnesium stearate, calcium stearate, talc, colloidal silica and the like can be mentioned. As the binder, for example, crystalline cellulose, sucrose, D-mannitol, dextrin, hydroxypropylcellulose, hydroxypropylmethylcellulose, polyvinylpyrrolidone, starch, sucrose, gelatin, methylcellulose, sodium carboxymethylcellulose and the like can be mentioned. As the disintegrant, for example, starch, carboxymethylcellulose, calcium carboxymethylcellulose, croscarmellose sodium, sodium carboxymethyl starch, L-hydroxypropylcellulose and the like can be mentioned. As the solvent, for example, water for injection, alcohol, propylene glycol, macrogol, sesame oil, corn oil, olive oil and the like can be mentioned. As the solubilizing agents, for example, polyethylene glycol, propylene glycol, D-mannitol, benzyl benzoate, ethanol, trisaminomethane, cholesterol, triethanolamine, sodium carbonate, sodium citrate and the like can be mentioned. As the suspending agent, for example, surfactants such as stearyltriethanolamine, sodium lauryl sulfate, lauryl aminopropionate, lecithin, benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride, glyceryl monostearate, and the like; for example, hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinyl alcohol, polyvinylpyrrolidone, sodium carboxymethylcellulose, methylcellulose, hydroxymethylcellulose, hydroxyethylcellulose,

hydroxypropylcellulose etc., and the like can be mentioned. As the isotonicity agent, for example, glucose, D-sorbitol, sodium chloride, glycerol, D-mannitol and the like can be mentioned. As the buffer, for example, buffer such as phosphate, acetate, 5 carbonate, citrate etc., and the like can be mentioned. As the soothing agent, for example, benzyl alcohol and the like can be mentioned. As the preservative, for example, p-hydroxybenzoates, chlorobutanol, benzyl alcohol, phenethyl alcohol, dehydroacetic acid, sorbic acid and the like can be 10 mentioned. As the antioxidant, for example, sulfite, ascorbic acid, α -tocopherol and the like can be mentioned.

While the dose of the compound of the present invention varies depending on the subject of administration, administration route and symptom and is not particularly 15 limited, for example, for oral administration to adult patients for the treatment of insomnia, it is about 0.001 to about 3 mg/kg body weight, preferably about 0.005 to about 2 mg/kg body weight, more preferably about 0.01 to about 1 mg/kg body weight, as the compound of the present invention, which is the active 20 ingredient. The dose is desirably administered about 1 to 3 times a day according to the symptom.

The content of the compound of the present invention in the above-mentioned "agent (pharmaceutical composition)" is about 0.01 to 100 wt% of the whole composition.

25 When the compound of the present invention is applied to each of the above-mentioned diseases, it can be used in appropriate combination with a pharmaceutical agent or a treatment method generally employed for the disease.

In the following, a combined use of the compound of the present invention with a concomitant drug is referred to as "the 30 combination agent of the present invention".

As such concomitant drug, for example, sleep inducing agents (e.g., GABA system sleep inducing agent such as brotizolam, estazolam, flurazepam, nitrazepam, triazolam,

flunitrazepam, lormetazepam, rilamazafone, quazepam, zopiclone, eszopiclone, zolpidem, zaleplon, indiplon, gabaxadol etc.; non-GABA system sleep inducing agent such as eplivaserin, pruvanserin, diphenhydramine, trazodone, doxepin etc., and the
5 like), antidepressants (e.g., fluoxetine, sertraline, paroxetine, venlafaxine, nefazodone, reboxetine, mirtazapine, imipramine hydrochloride, duloxetine, escitalopram, mifepristone, doxepin, etc.), antianxiety agents (e.g., alprazolam, bromazepam, chlordiazepoxide, diazepam, etizolam,
10 flutoprazepam, lorazepam, etc.), therapeutic agents for Alzheimer's disease (e.g., cholinesterase inhibitors such as donepezil, rivastigmine, galanthamine, zanapezil etc.; cerebral function activators such as idebenone, memantine, vinpocetine etc.; agents for suppressing progression such as Alzhemed etc.,
15 and the like), antiparkinson agents (e.g., L-DOPA, deprenyl, carbidopa+levodopa, pergolide, ropinirole, cabergoline, pramipexole, entacaprone, lazabemide etc.), therapeutic agents for amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (e.g., riluzole, mecasermin, gabapentin, etc.), neurotrophic factors, therapeutic agents for
20 schizophrenia (e.g., olanzapine, risperidone, quetiapine, iloperidone, etc.), hypolipidemic agents (e.g., simvastatin, fluvastatin, pravastatin, atorvastatin, etc.), antihypertensive agents (e.g., captopril, delapril, enalapril, nifedipine, nicardipine, amlodipine, alprenolol, propranolol, metoprolol,
25 losartan, valsartan, candesartan, etc.), therapeutic agents for diabetes (e.g., pioglitazone, rosiglitazone, metformin, glibenclamide, nateglinide, voglibose, etc.), antiplatelet agents (e.g., ticlopidine, heparin, urokinase, alteplase, tisokinase, nasaruplase, cilostazol, etc.), antioxidants (e.g.,
30 linolenic acid, ascorbic acid, icosapentaenoic acid, docosahexaenoic acid, tocopherol, etc.), vitamins (e.g., tocopherol, ascorbic acid, etc.), sex hormones (e.g., estrogen, estrone, estradiol, etc.), antiinflammatory agents (e.g., prednisolone, betamethasone, dexamethasone, etc.), nonsteroidal

antiinflammatory agents (e.g., indomethacin, ibuprofen, acetylsalicylic acid, diclofenac, naproxen, piroxicam, etc.), COX-2 inhibitors (e.g., celecoxib, rofecoxib, etc.), cerebral circulation metabolism improving agents (e.g., nicergoline, 5 ibudilast, ifenprodil, etc.), anticonvulsants (e.g., carbamazepine, valproic acid, clonazepam, vigabatrin, lamotrigine, gabapentin, etc.) and pharmacologically acceptable salts thereof and the like can be mentioned.

By combining the compound of the present invention and a 10 concomitant drug, a superior effect such as

- (1) the dose can be reduced as compared to single administration of the compound of the present invention or a concomitant drug,
- (2) the concomitant drug can be selected according to the condition of patients (mild case, severe case and the like),
- 15 (3) the period of treatment can be set longer by selecting a concomitant drug having different action and mechanism from the compound of the present invention,
- (4) a sustained treatment effect can be designed by selecting a concomitant drug having different action and mechanism from the 20 compound of the present invention,
- (5) a synergistic effect can be afforded by a combined use of the compound of the present invention and a concomitant drug, and the like, can be achieved.

A combination agent of the present invention has low 25 toxicity, and for example, the compound of the present invention and/or the above-mentioned concomitant drug can be mixed, according to a method known *per se*, with a pharmacologically acceptable carrier to give pharmaceutical compositions, such as tablets (including sugar-coated tablet, film-coated tablet), 30 powders, granules, capsules, solutions, emulsions, suspensions, injections, suppositories, sustained release preparations (e.g., sublingual tablet, microcapsule etc.), plasters, orally disintegrating tablets, orally disintegrating films and the like, which can be safely administered orally or parenterally

(e.g., subcutaneous, topical, rectal, intravenous administrations etc.).

As pharmacologically acceptable carriers usable for the production of the combination agent of the present invention, various organic or inorganic carrier substances conventionally used as preparation materials can be mentioned. For example, suitable amounts of additives such as excipient, lubricant, binder and disintegrant for solid preparations, or solvent, solubilizing agent, suspending agent, isotonicity agent, buffer and soothing agent for liquid preparations, and where necessary, conventional preservative, antioxidant, coloring agent, sweetening agent, adsorbent, wetting agent and the like can be used appropriately.

When using the combination agent of the present invention, the administration time of the compound of the present invention and the concomitant drug is not restricted, and the compound of the present invention or a pharmaceutical composition thereof and the concomitant drug or a pharmaceutical composition thereof can be administered to an administration subject simultaneously, or may be administered at different times. The dosage of the concomitant drug may be determined according to the administration amount clinically used, and can be appropriately selected depending on an administration subject, administration route, disease, combination and the like.

Examples of such administration mode include the following:

(1) administration of a single preparation obtained by simultaneously processing the compound of the present invention and the concomitant drug, (2) simultaneous administration of two kinds of preparations of the compound of the present invention and the concomitant drug, which have been separately produced, by the same administration route, (3) administration of two kinds of preparations of the compound of the present invention and the concomitant drug, which have been separately produced,

by the same administration route in a staggered manner, (4) simultaneous administration of two kinds of preparations of the compound of the present invention and the concomitant drug, which have been separately produced, by different administration routes, (5) administration of two kinds of preparations of the compound of the present invention and the concomitant drug, which have been separately produced, by different administration routes in a staggered manner (for example, administration in the order of the compound of the present invention and the concomitant drug, or in the reverse order) and the like.

The compounding ratio of the compound of the present invention to the concomitant drug in the combination agent of the present invention can be appropriately selected depending on an administration subject, administration route, diseases and the like.

For example, the content of the compound of the present invention in the combination agent of the present invention varies depending on the form of a preparation, and usually from about 0.01 to 100 wt%, preferably from about 0.1 to 50 wt%, further preferably from about 0.5 to 20 wt%, based on the whole preparation.

While the content of the concomitant drug in the combination agent of the present invention varies depending on the form of a preparation, it is usually from about 0.01 to 100 wt%, preferably from about 0.1 to 50 wt%, further preferably from about 0.5 to 20 wt%, based on the whole preparation.

While the content of the additives such as carrier and the like in the combination agent of the present invention varies depending on the form of a preparation, it is generally about 1 to 99.99 wt%, preferably about 10 to 90 wt%, based on the whole preparation.

Similar contents can be employed for individual preparations of the compound of the present invention and the concomitant drug.

The SEQ ID NOs in the sequence listing in the present specification shows the following sequences.

SEQ ID NO: 1 shows the base sequence of cDNA fragment encoding
5 the full-length human melatonin 1 receptor (human MT₁ receptor).
(see Gen Bank ACCESSION No. NM_005958)

SEQ ID NO: 2 shows the base sequence of cDNA fragment encoding
the full-length human melatonin 2 receptor (human MT₂ receptor).
(see Gen Bank ACCESSION No. NM_005959)

10

The present invention is explained in detail in the following by referring to Reference Examples, Examples, Formulation Examples and Experimental Examples. However, the examples are mere exemplifications and do not limit the
15 present invention. The present invention may be modified without departing from the scope of the invention.

In the following Reference Examples and Examples, the "room temperature" means generally about 10°C to about 35°C, % means mol/mol% for the yield, % by volume for the solvent used
20 for chromatography, and wt% for others.

Other abbreviations used in the text mean the following.

s : singlet
d : doublet
t : triplet
25 q : quartet
m : multiplet
br: broad
J : coupling constant
Hz: Hertz
30 CDCl₃: deuteriochloroform
DMSO-d₆: deuteriodimethyl sulfoxide
METHANOL-d₄: deuteriomethanol
¹H-NMR: proton nuclear magnetic resonance
ee: enantiomer excess

The elution for the column chromatography in the Examples was performed under observation by TLC (Thin Layer Chromatography). In the TLC observation, 60F254 manufactured by Merck or NH manufactured by Fuji Silysia Chemical Ltd. was used
5 as a TLC plate.

Unless otherwise specified, the silica gel packed in the column was silica gel 60 (70-230 mesh) (manufactured by Merck) or PURIF-pack (SI 60 μ m) (manufactured by Moritex Corporation). When described as silica gel chromatography (NH), CHROMATOREX-NH
10 DM1020 (100-200 mesh) (manufactured by Fuji Silysia Chemical Ltd.) or PURIF-pack (NH 60 μ m) (manufactured by Moritex Corporation) was used. Unless otherwise specified, moreover, the elution solvent for silica gel column chromatography is in volume ratio.

15 As Raney cobalt, Raney cobalt catalyst ODHT-60 (manufactured by Kawaken Fine Chemicals Co., Ltd.) was used after washing with water and ethanol.

In the following Reference Examples and Examples, ^1H -NMR spectrum was measured using tetramethylsilane as the internal
20 standard and the chemical shift is expressed in δ value and the coupling constant is expressed in Hz.

In the following Reference Examples and Examples, melting point, mass spectrum (MS), specific rotation, and nuclear magnetic resonance spectrum (NMR) were measured under the
25 following conditions.

Melting point apparatus: Yanagimoto micromelting point apparatus, or Buchi B-545 melting point apparatus

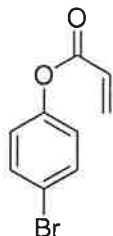
MS measurement instrument: Waters ZMD, or Waters ZQ, ionization method: Electron Spray Ionization (ESI)

30 Polarimeter: JASCO P-1030

NMR measurement instrument: Varian, Inc., Varian Mercury 300 (300 MHz), Bruker BioSpin AVANCE 300 (300 MHz)

Reference Example 1

4-Bromophenyl acrylate

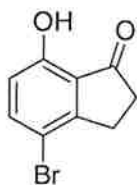


To a solution of 4-bromophenol (15.1 g, 87.3 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (170 mL) was added 60% sodium hydride (3.68 g, 91.6 mmol) under ice-cooling and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. A solution of acryloyl chloride (8.3 g, 91.6 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (50 mL) was added, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min under ice-cooling. Water was added, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=20/80) to give the title compound (yield 100%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 6.03 (1H, dd, $J = 10.5, 1.1$ Hz), 6.31 (1H, dd, $J = 17.3, 10.5$ Hz), 6.61 (1H, dd, $J = 17.3, 1.1$ Hz), 7.03 (2H, d, $J = 9.1$ Hz), 7.50 (2H, d, $J = 9.1$ Hz).

Reference Example 2

4-Bromo-7-hydroxyindan-1-one



To a mixture of aluminum trichloride (120 g) and sodium chloride (40 g) heated to 100°C was added 4-bromophenyl acrylate (10.5 g, 50.7 mmol), and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. Then, the mixture was heated to 140°C, and the mixture was stirred for 45 min. The mixture was poured into ice-cooled water and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate.

The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=20/80) and recrystallized (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give the title compound (3.82 g, yield 36%).

5 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.68 - 2.83 (2H, m), 2.99 - 3.09 (2H, m), 6.71 (1H, d, $J = 8.8$ Hz), 7.58 (1H, d, $J = 8.8$ Hz), 9.01 (1H, s).

Reference Example 3

4-Bromo-7-hydroxy-6-nitroindan-1-one



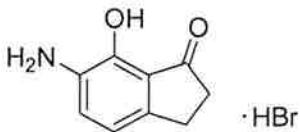
10 4-Bromo-7-hydroxyindan-1-one (3.06 g, 13.5 mmol) was suspended in acetic acid (20 mL), and acetic anhydride (1.66 mL, 17.6 mmol) and fuming nitric acid (838 μL , 20.2 mmol) dissolved in acetic acid (10 mL) were added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hr. The solvent was evaporated under
15 reduced pressure and the precipitated yellow crystals were collected by filtration to give the title compound (2.98 g, yield 79%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.83 - 2.92 (2H, m), 3.08 - 3.16 (2H, m), 8.50 (1H, s), 10.99 (1H, s),

20 melting point: 149 - 151°C (recrystallized from methanol),
Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_9\text{H}_6\text{BrNO}_4$
Found (%): C, 39.88; H, 2.40; N, 5.37.

Reference Example 4

6-Amino-7-hydroxyindan-1-one hydrobromide



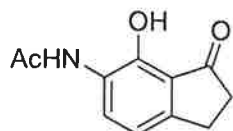
25 4-Bromo-7-hydroxy-6-nitroindan-1-one (2.90 g, 10.66 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (53 mL), a 10% palladium-carbon powder (290 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room

temperature for 6 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give the title compound (2.08 g, yield 80%).

- 5 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (METHANOL- d_4) δ : 2.69 - 2.82 (2H, m), 3.12 - 3.21 (2H, m), 7.13 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.57 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), hidden (4H).

Reference Example 5

N-(4-Hydroxy-3-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl)acetamide



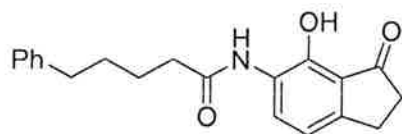
- 10 6-Amino-7-hydroxyindan-1-one hydrobromide (800 mg, 3.28 mmol) was suspended in tetrahydrofuran (20 mL), triethylamine (571 μL , 4.10 mmol) and acetic anhydride (387 μL , 4.10 mmol) were added, and the mixture was stirred for 1.5 hr. To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium

- 15 hydrogencarbonate solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=60/40 $\rightarrow$ 100/0) to
20 give the title compound (481 mg, yield 71%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.23 (3H, s), 2.70 - 2.78 (2H, m), 3.07 - 3.13 (2H, m), 6.95 (1H, d, $J = 8.3$ Hz), 7.51 (1H, brs), 8.51 (1H, d, $J = 8.2$ Hz), 9.17 (1H, brs).

Reference Example 6

- 25 N-(4-Hydroxy-3-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl)-5-phenylpentanamide



- 6-Amino-7-hydroxyindan-1-one hydrobromide (50 mg, 0.256 mmol) and 5-phenylvaleric acid (54.8 mg, 0.307 mmol) were
30 dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (1.3 mL), diethyl

cyanophosphate (45.7 μ L, 0.307 mmol) and triethylamine (120 μ L, 0.896 mmol) were added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 min. The reaction solution was diluted with diethyl ether, washed with water and saturated brine, and dried
5 over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=10/90 $\rightarrow$ 40/60) to give the title compound (21.8 mg, yield 26%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.68 - 1.86 (4H, m), 2.44 (2H, t, $J = 7.0$ Hz),
10 2.67 (2H, t, $J = 7.0$ Hz), 2.71 - 2.77 (2H, m), 3.04 - 3.14 (2H, m), 6.95 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.12 - 7.22 (3H, m), 7.23 - 7.32 (2H, m), 7.48 (1H, brs), 8.54 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 9.17 (1H, s), melting point: 119 - 121°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

15 MS (ESI+): 324 (M+H),

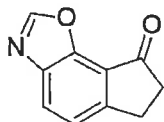
Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{21}\text{NO}_3 \cdot 0.1\text{H}_2\text{O}$

Calcd. (%): C, 73.87; H, 6.57; N, 4.31

Found (%): C, 73.94; H, 6.47; N, 4.20.

Reference Example 7

20 6,7-Dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-one



6-Amino-7-hydroxyindan-1-one hydrobromide (50 mg, 0.205 mmol) and triethyl orthoformate (128 μ L, 0.769 mmol) were heated under reflux in tetrahydrofuran (2.5 mL) for 0.5 hr. The
25 mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=30/70 $\rightarrow$ 80/20) to give the title compound (21.9
30 mg, yield from Reference Example 3 62%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.80 - 2.87 (2H, m), 3.29 - 3.36 (2H, m), 7.48 (1H, d, $J = 8.2$ Hz), 8.02 (1H, d, $J = 8.2$ Hz), 8.19 (1H, s),

melting point: 188 - 190°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 174 (M+H),

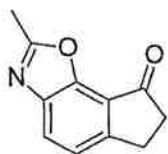
Elemental analysis: for C₁₀H₇NO₂

5 Calcd. (%): C, 69.36; H, 4.07; N, 8.09

Found (%): C, 69.04; H, 4.02; N, 8.14.

Reference Example 8

2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-one



10 N-(4-Hydroxy-3-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl)acetamide
(469 mg, 2.29 mmol) and pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate (115 mg,
0.457 mmol) were heated under reflux in xylene (23 mL) for 2.5
hr. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the
residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl
15 acetate/hexane=10/90→100/0) to give the title compound (363 mg,
yield 85%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.71 (3H, s), 2.78 - 2.85 (2H, m), 3.24 - 3.33
(2H, m), 7.38 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.86 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

melting point: 106 - 107°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl

20 acetate),

MS (ESI+): 188 (M+H),

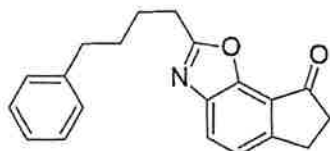
Elemental analysis: for C₁₁H₉NO₂•0.1H₂O

Calcd. (%): C, 69.90; H, 4.91; N, 7.41

Found (%): C, 70.09; H, 4.77; N, 7.20.

25 Reference Example 9

2-(4-Phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-one



N-(4-Hydroxy-3-oxo-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl)-5-
phenylpentanamide (205 mg, 0.634 mmol) and pyridinium p-

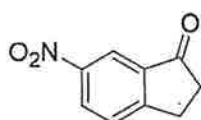
toluenesulfonate (31.9 mg, 0.127 mmol) were heated under reflux in xylene (6 mL) for 3 hr. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=10/90→40/60) to give the title compound (124 mg, yield 64%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.70 - 1.84 (2H, m), 1.90 - 2.04 (2H, m), 2.68 (2H, t, J = 7.6 Hz), 2.77 - 2.86 (2H, m), 3.03 (2H, t, J = 7.6 Hz), 3.24 - 3.33 (2H, m), 7.12 - 7.22 (3H, m), 7.22 - 7.31 (2H, m), 7.38 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.88 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz),

MS (ESI⁺): 306 (M+H).

Reference Example 10

6-Nitro-1-indanone

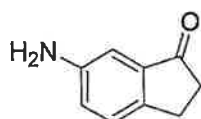


1-Indanone (5.00 g, 37.8 mmol) was dissolved in sulfuric acid (40 mL), and thereto was added dropwise a solution of potassium nitrate (3.83 g, 37.8 mmol) in sulfuric acid (10 mL) under ice-cooling. The mixture was stirred for 1 hr under ice-cooling, ice was added to the reaction solution, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The precipitated solid was collected by filtration, and purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=15/85→45/55) to give the title compound (4.01 g, yield 60%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.78 - 2.90 (2H, m), 3.22 - 3.34 (2H, m), 7.67 (1H, d, J = 8.5 Hz), 8.45 (1H, dd, J = 8.5, 2.3 Hz), 8.57 (1H, d, J = 2.3 Hz).

Reference Example 11

6-Amino-1-indanone



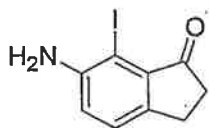
6-Nitro-1-indanone (10.0 g, 56.4 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (200 mL), a 10% palladium-carbon powder (500 mg) was

added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. To the reaction solution were added dichloromethane and ethyl acetate to dissolve the precipitated crystals, and the catalyst was filtered off. The filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was washed with methanol to give the title compound (6.71 g, yield 81%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.62 - 2.72 (2H, m), 2.95 - 3.05 (2H, m), 3.79 (2H, brs), 6.92 - 6.97 (1H, m), 6.99 (1H, d, $J = 2.2$ Hz), 7.25 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz).

Reference Example 12

6-Amino-7-iodoindan-1-one



6-Amino-1-indanone (5.00 g, 34.0 mmol) was dissolved in a mixed solvent of methanol (200 mL) and water (50 mL), calcium carbonate (6.81 g, 68.0 mmol) and iodine(I) chloride (2.22 mL, 44.2 mmol) were added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hr. To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium thiosulfate solution, and the organic solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. To the mixture was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and washed with saturated brine. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was washed with methanol and ethyl acetate to give the title compound (7.95 g, yield 86%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d_6) δ : 2.56 - 2.66 (2H, m), 2.78 - 2.87 (2H, m), 5.48 (2H, s), 7.08 (1H, d, $J = 8.2$ Hz), 7.25 (1H, d, $J = 8.2$ Hz).

melting point: 183 - 186°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 274 (M+H),

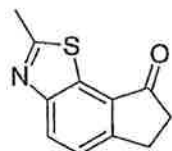
Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8\text{NOI}$

Calcd. (%): C, 39.59; H, 2.95; N, 5.13

Found (%): C, 39.65; H, 2.87; N, 5.07.

Reference Example 13

2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-one



5 6-Amino-7-iodoindan-1-one (1.00 g, 3.66 mmol),
thioacetamide (413 mg, 5.49 mmol), 1,1'-
bis(diphenylphosphino)ferrocene (383 mg, 1.46 mmol), calcium
oxide (411 mg, 7.32 mmol) and
tris(dibenzylideneacetone)dipalladium(0) (335 mg, 0.37 mmol)
10 were dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (12 mL), and the mixture
was stirred at 60°C for 1 hr. After allowing to cool to room
temperature, water was added to the reaction solution. The
mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and washed with
saturated brine. The solvent was evaporated under reduced
15 pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column
chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=25/75→65/35), and then
purified by silica gel column chromatography (NH, ethyl
acetate/hexane=10/90→40/60) to give the title compound (340 mg,
yield 46%).

20 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.80 - 2.86 (2H, m), 2.90 (3H, s), 3.27 - 3.33
(2H, m), 7.54 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 8.15 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz),
melting point: 163 - 165°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate),
MS (ESI+): 204 (M+H),

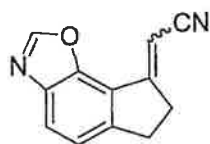
Elemental analysis: for C₁₁H₉NOS

25 Calcd. (%): C, 65.00; H, 4.46; N, 6.89

Found (%): C, 65.00; H, 4.29; N, 6.94.

Reference Example 14

(6,7-Dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)acetonitrile



To a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (73.4 mg, 1.84 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (8 mL) was added diethyl cyanomethylphosphonate (322 μ L, 1.99 mmol) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. Thereto was added a solution of 6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-one (265 mg, 1.53 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (8 mL), and the mixture was further stirred for 30 min. To the reaction mixture was added saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=10/90 $\rightarrow$ 40/60) to give the title compound (220 mg, yield 73%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 3.16 - 3.37 (4H, m), 6.07 (1H, t, $J = 2.5$ Hz), 7.36 (1H, d, $J = 8.2$ Hz), 7.81 (1H, d, $J = 8.2$ Hz), 8.15 (1H, s),

melting point: 166 - 168°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI $^{+}$): 197 (M+H),

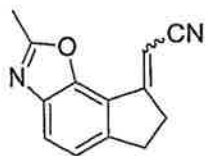
Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_8\text{N}_2\text{O}$

Calcd. (%): C, 73.46; H, 4.11; N, 14.28

Found (%): C, 73.44; H, 4.05; N, 14.49.

Reference Example 15

(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)acetonitrile



To a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (90.0 mg, 2.24 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (9 mL) was added diethyl cyanomethylphosphonate (393 μ L, 2.43 mmol) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. Thereto was added a solution of 2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-

one (350 mg, 1.87 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (9 mL), and the mixture was further stirred for 1 hr. To the reaction mixture was added saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=10/90→40/60) to give the title compound (300 mg, yield 76%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.70 (3H, s), 3.15 - 3.31 (4H, m), 6.04 (1H, t, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.28 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.67 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), melting point: 180 - 182°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate), MS (ESI+): 211 (M+H),

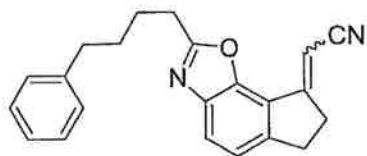
Elemental analysis: for C₁₃H₁₀N₂O

Calcd. (%): C, 74.27; H, 4.79; N, 13.33

Found (%): C, 74.22; H, 4.75; N, 13.16.

Reference Example 16

[2-(4-Phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene]acetonitrile



20

To a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (19.5 mg, 0.487 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (2 mL) was added diethyl cyanomethylphosphonate (85.4 μL, 0.528 mmol) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. Thereto was added a solution of 2-(4-phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-one (124 mg, 0.406 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (2 mL), and the mixture was further stirred for 30 min. To the reaction mixture was added saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column

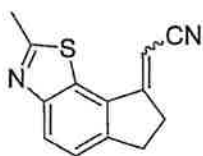
30

chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=10/90→40/60) to give the title compound (125 mg, yield 94%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.71 - 1.85 (2H, m), 1.88 - 2.02 (2H, m), 2.70 (2H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 3.00 (2H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 3.15 - 3.31 (4H, m), 5.99 (1H, t, J = 2.6 Hz), 7.14 - 7.23 (3H, m), 7.23 - 7.33 (3H, m), 7.68 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz),
MS (ESI+): 329 (M+H).

Reference Example 17

(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-ylidene)acetonitrile



To a suspension of diethyl cyanomethylphosphonate (393 mg, 2.22 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (6 mL) was added 65% sodium hydride (66.0 mg, 1.79 mmol) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 min. Thereto was added a solution of 2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-one (300 mg, 1.48 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (6 mL), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hr. To the mixture were added diethyl cyanomethylphosphonate (131 mg, 0.74 mmol) and 65% sodium hydride (16.0 mg, 0.43 mmol), and the mixture was further stirred at room temperature for 30 min. To the reaction mixture was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to give the title compound (181 mg, yield 54%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.91 (3H, s), 3.27 (4H, s), 5.60 - 5.63 (1H, m), 7.46 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 8.01 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz),
melting point: 194 - 195°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 227 (M+H),

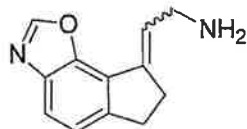
Elemental analysis: for C₁₃H₁₀N₂S

Calcd. (%): C, 69.00; H, 4.45; N, 12.38

Found (%): C, 68.76; H, 4.19; N, 12.40.

5 Reference Example 18

2-(6,7-Dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethanamine

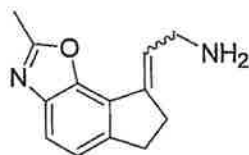


To a solution of (6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)acetonitrile (210 mg, 1.07 mmol) in ethanol (8 mL) were added Raney cobalt (2 g) and 2N ammonia/ethanol solution (4 mL), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (NH, ethyl acetate/hexane=50/50→100/0) to give the title compound (60.2 mg, yield 28%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.83 - 2.91 (2H, m), 3.14 - 3.21 (2H, m), 3.55 (2H, d, J = 7.1 Hz), 6.38 - 6.47 (1H, m), 7.24 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.59 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 8.10 (1H, s), hidden (2H).

20 Reference Example 19

2-(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethanamine



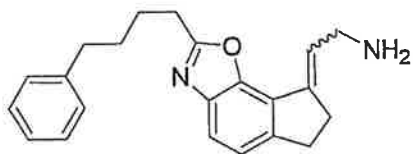
To a solution of (2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)acetonitrile (290 mg, 1.38 mmol) in ethanol (8 mL) were added Raney cobalt (3 g) and 2N ammonia/ethanol solution (4 mL), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give the title compound.

The obtained title compound was used for the reaction of Examples 3 and 5 without further purification.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.65 (3H, s), 2.77 - 2.89 (2H, m), 3.08 - 3.17 (2H, m), 3.52 (2H, d, J = 6.9 Hz), 6.35 - 6.43 (1H, m), 7.15 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.44 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), hidden (2H).

Reference Example 20

2-[2-(4-Phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene]ethanamine

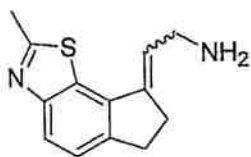


To a solution of [2-(4-phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene]acetonitrile (125 mg, 0.382 mmol) in ethanol (2.4 mL) were added Raney cobalt (1.2 g) and 2N ammonia/ethanol solution (1.2 mL), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give the title compound. The obtained title compound was used for the reaction of Examples 6 and 7 without further purification.

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.73 - 1.85 (2H, m), 1.87 - 2.01 (2H, m), 2.70 (2H, t, J = 7.6 Hz), 2.80 - 2.90 (2H, m), 2.98 (2H, t, J = 7.6 Hz), 3.11 - 3.19 (2H, m), 3.54 (2H, d, J = 7.1 Hz), 6.33 - 6.42 (1H, m), 7.14 - 7.22 (4H, m), 7.22 - 7.32 (2H, m), 7.47 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), hidden (2H).

Reference Example 21

2-(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-ylidene)ethanamine



(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-ylidene)acetonitrile (170 mg, 0.75 mmol) was dissolved in 2N ammonia/methanol solution (30 mL), Raney cobalt (1.7 g) was

added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give the title compound. The obtained title

5 compound was used for the reaction of Example 8 without further purification.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.79 - 2.96 (5H, m), 3.08 - 3.21 (2H, m), 4.13 (2H, d, $J = 6.6$ Hz), 6.01 - 6.12 (1H, m), 7.33 (1H, d, $J = 8.2$ Hz), 7.80 (1H, d, $J = 8.2$ Hz), hidden (2H).

10 Reference Example 22

4-Bromo-7-methoxy-6-nitroindan-1-one



4-Bromo-7-hydroxy-6-nitroindan-1-one (8.07 g, 29.7 mmol) and 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (5.33 mL, 35.6 mmol) were dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (150 mL), iodomethane (18.5 mL, 297 mmol) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 40 hr. To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution. The mixture was extracted with diethyl ether, washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=30/70→60/40) to give the title compound (6.70 g, yield 79%).

25 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.78 - 2.86 (2H, m), 3.07 - 3.15 (2H, m), 4.13 (3H, s), 8.16 (1H, s),

melting point: 138 - 139°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

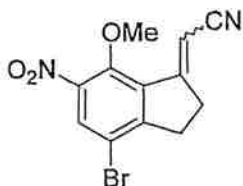
MS (ESI+): 286 (M+H),

30 Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_8\text{NO}_4\text{Br}$

Found (%): C, 41.98; H, 2.76; N, 4.82.

(4-Bromo-7-methoxy-6-nitro-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-

5 ylidene) acetonitrile



To a suspension of 60% sodium hydride (1.03 g, 25.6 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (100 mL) was added diethyl cyanomethylphosphonate (4.52 mL, 28.0 mmol) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. Thereto was added a solution of 4-bromo-7-methoxy-6-nitroindan-1-one (6.67 g, 23.3 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (50 mL), and the mixture was further stirred for 30 min. To the reaction mixture was added saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=10/90→40/60) to give the title compound (5.54 g, yield 77%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 3.09 - 3.25 (4H, m), 3.94 (3H, s), 6.27 (1H, t, J = 2.6 Hz), 8.03 (1H, s),

melting point: 156 - 158°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

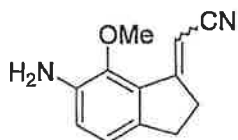
25 Elemental analysis: for $C_{12}H_9N_2O_3Br$

Calcd. (%): C, 46.63; H, 2.93; N, 9.06

Found (%): C, 46.66; H, 2.86; N, 9.09.

Reference Example 24

(6-Amino-7-methoxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-ylidene)acetonitrile

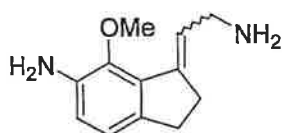


(4-Bromo-7-methoxy-6-nitro-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-ylidene)acetonitrile (47.0 mg, 0.152 mmol) and triethylamine (22.3 μ L, 0.160 mmol) were dissolved in ethyl acetate (1.5 mL),
 5 a 10% palladium-carbon powder (10 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give the title compound (30.4 mg, yield 100%).
 10 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.94 - 3.01 (2H, m), 3.04 - 3.11 (2H, m), 3.76 (3H, s), 3.78 (2H, brs), 6.11 (1H, t, $J = 2.6$ Hz), 6.81 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 6.91 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz),
 melting point: 140 - 142°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

15 MS (ESI+): 201 (M+H),
 Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{12}\text{N}_2\text{O}$
 Calcd. (%): C, 71.98; H, 6.04; N, 13.99
 Found (%): C, 71.60; H, 6.14; N, 13.94.

Reference Example 25

20 3-(2-Aminoethylidene)-4-methoxyindan-5-amine



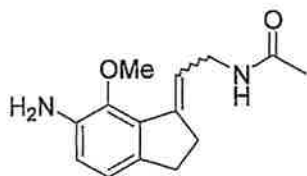
To a solution of (6-amino-7-methoxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-ylidene)acetonitrile (15.2 mg, 0.076 mmol) in ethanol (0.5 mL) were added Raney cobalt (150 mg) and 2N ammonia/ethanol solution
 25 (0.5 mL), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give the title compound (15.3 mg, yield 99%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.67 - 2.75 (2H, m), 2.84 - 2.94 (2H, m), 3.48
 30 (2H, d, $J = 6.6$ Hz), 3.72 (2H, brs), 3.77 (3H, s), 6.34 - 6.44

(1H, m), 6.62 (1H, d, $J = 7.7$ Hz), 6.81 (1H, d, $J = 7.7$ Hz),
hidden (2H).

Reference Example 26

N-[2-(6-Amino-7-methoxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide



3-(2-Aminoethylidene)-4-methoxyindan-5-amine (15.3 mg,
0.076 mmol) and triethylamine (21.2 μ L, 0.152 mmol) were
dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (0.9 mL), a solution of acetic
10 anhydride (7.18 μ L, 0.076 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (0.1 mL) was
added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min.
To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium
hydrogencarbonate solution. The mixture was extracted with
ethyl acetate and washed with saturated brine. The solvent was
15 evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified
by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl
acetate/methanol=100/0 $\rightarrow$ 90/10) to give the title compound (16.2
mg, yield 87%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.01 (3H, s), 2.70 - 2.80 (2H, m), 2.85 - 2.96
20 (2H, m), 3.75 (3H, s), 4.01 - 4.09 (2H, m), 5.52 (1H, brs), 6.25
- 6.33 (1H, m), 6.65 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 6.82 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$
Hz), hidden (2H).

melting point: 105 - 107°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl
acetate),

25 MS (ESI+): 247 (M+H),

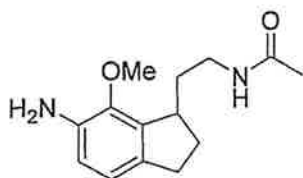
Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{18}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$

Calcd. (%): C, 68.27; H, 7.37; N, 11.37

Found (%): C, 67.93; H, 7.25; N, 11.10.

Reference Example 27

30 N-[2-(6-Amino-7-methoxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide



N-[2-(6-Amino-7-methoxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide (2.62 g, 10.7 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (50 mL), a 10% palladium-carbon powder (500 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to give the title compound (2.56 g, yield 96%).
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.68 - 1.93 (3H, m), 1.95 (3H, s), 2.16 - 2.31 (1H, m), 2.65 - 2.79 (1H, m), 2.81 - 2.96 (1H, m), 3.09 - 3.24 (1H, m), 3.28 - 3.50 (2H, m), 3.79 (3H, s), 3.91 (2H, brs), 5.71 (1H, brs), 6.60 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 6.78 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), melting point: 130 - 132°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI⁺): 249 (M+H),

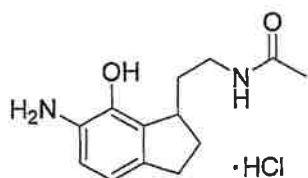
Elemental analysis: for C₁₄H₂₀N₂O₂

Calcd. (%): C, 67.71; H, 8.12; N, 11.28

Found (%): C, 67.56; H, 8.01; N, 11.27.

Reference Example 28

N-[2-(6-Amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride



To a solution of N-[2-(6-amino-7-methoxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide (2.56 g, 10.3 mmol) in dichloromethane (80 mL) was added a solution of boron tribromide in dichloromethane (1M, 22.7 mL, 22.7 mmol) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hr. To the reaction solution was added water, and the mixture was

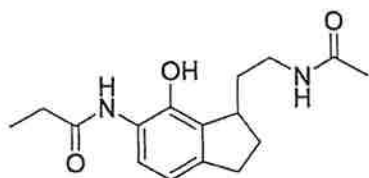
diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution and saturated brine, and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in dichloromethane (80 mL), a solution of boron tribromide in dichloromethane (1M, 22.7 mL, 22.7 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hr. To the reaction solution was added water, and the mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution and saturated brine, and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in ethyl acetate, and converted to hydrochloride with 4N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure to give the title compound (2.51 g, yield 90%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO- d_6) δ : 1.31 - 1.46 (1H, m), 1.68 - 1.86 (3H, m), 1.80 (3H, s), 1.99 - 2.14 (1H, m), 2.64 - 2.77 (1H, m), 2.80 - 2.95 (1H, m), 3.04 - 3.13 (1H, m), 3.37 - 3.50 (1H, m), 6.74 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.13 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 8.09 (1H, brs), 9.87 (3H, brs), 10.14 (1H, brs),

MS (ESI+): 235 (M+H).

Reference Example 29

N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}propanamide



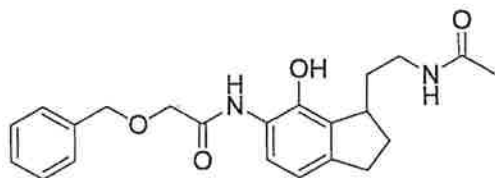
N-[2-(6-Amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.369 mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (4 mL), propionic anhydride (52.1 μL , 0.406 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. Water was added to the reaction solution, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The

residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol=100/0→90/10) to give the title compound (94.5 mg, yield 88%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.28 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.73 - 1.87 (3H, m),
5 2.02 (3H, s), 2.16 - 2.31 (1H, m), 2.48 (2H, q, J = 7.4 Hz),
2.67 - 2.79 (1H, m), 2.88 - 3.03 (1H, m), 3.15 - 3.29 (1H, m),
3.29 - 3.43 (2H, m), 6.29 (1H, brs), 6.71 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),
7.13 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.82 (1H, brs), 9.77 (1H, brs),
MS (ESI+): 291 (M+H).

10 Reference Example 30

N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-2-(benzyloxy)acetamide

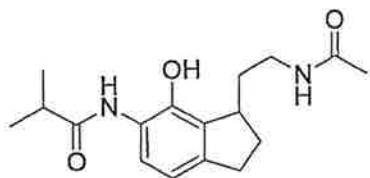


N-[2-(6-Amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (251 mg, 0.928 mmol) was
15 dissolved in pyridine (10 mL), (benzyloxy)acetyl chloride (160
μL, 1.01 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was
stirred for 15 min. Water was added to the reaction solution,
and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The
20 residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl
acetate/hexane=80/20→100/0) to give the title compound (285 mg,
yield 80%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.76 - 1.89 (3H, m), 2.00 (3H, s), 2.15 - 2.33
(1H, m), 2.66 - 2.82 (1H, m), 2.89 - 3.06 (1H, m), 3.10 - 3.30
25 (1H, m), 3.33 - 3.48 (2H, m), 4.14 (2H, s), 4.69 (2H, s), 6.17
(1H, brs), 6.73 (1H, d, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.03 (1H, d, J = 7.9 Hz),
7.33 - 7.46 (5H, m), 8.65 (1H, s), 9.71 (1H, s),
MS (ESI+): 383 (M+H).

Reference Example 31

30 N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-2-methylpropanamide



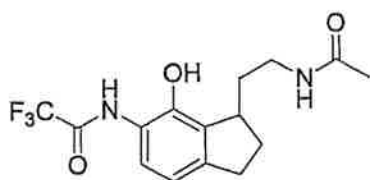
N-[2-(6-Amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.369 mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (4 mL), isobutyryl chloride (42.5 μ L, 0.406 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 3 hr. Water was added to the reaction solution, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol=100/0 $\rightarrow$ 95/5) to give the title compound (118 mg, yield 100%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.08 - 1.34 (6H, m), 1.61 - 1.88 (2H, m), 1.90 - 2.09 (4H, m), 2.10 - 2.35 (1H, m), 2.52 - 2.78 (2H, m), 2.83 - 3.24 (2H, m), 3.26 - 3.58 (2H, m), 6.58 (1H, s), 6.68 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.12 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 8.33 (1H, brs), hidden (1H),

MS (ESI $^+$): 305 (M+H).

Reference Example 32

N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-2,2,2-trifluoroacetamide



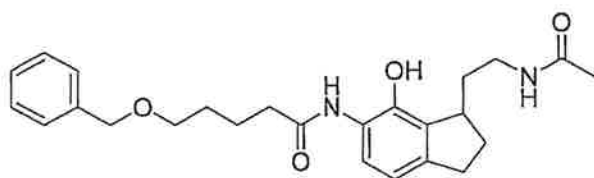
N-[2-(6-Amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.369 mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (4 mL), trifluoroacetic anhydride (56.1 μ L, 0.406 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. Water was added to the reaction solution, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl

acetate/hexane=30/70→80/20) to give the title compound (27.8 mg, yield 23%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.66 - 1.92 (3H, m), 2.13 (3H, s), 2.17 - 2.32 (1H, m), 2.68 - 2.80 (1H, m), 2.87 - 3.03 (2H, m), 3.31 - 3.42 (1H, m), 3.62 - 3.78 (1H, m), 6.10 (1H, brs), 6.77 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 8.07 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 8.80 (1H, s), 10.83 (1H, s), MS (ESI+): 331 (M+H).

Reference Example 33

N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-5-(benzyloxy)pentanamide

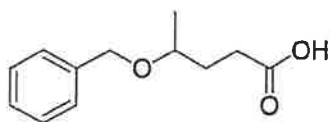


N-[2-(6-Amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (162 mg, 0.600 mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (10 mL), 5-(benzyloxy)pentanoyl chloride (150 mg, 0.662 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=80/20→100/0) to give the title compound (105 mg, yield 41%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.70 - 1.95 (7H, m), 1.99 (3H, s), 2.13 - 2.30 (1H, m), 2.50 (2H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 2.64 - 2.76 (1H, m), 2.86 - 3.02 (1H, m), 3.07 - 3.22 (1H, m), 3.30 - 3.47 (2H, m), 3.58 (2H, t, J = 5.8 Hz), 4.51 (2H, s), 6.29 (1H, brs), 6.61 - 6.66 (1H, m), 6.68 - 6.73 (1H, m), 7.26 - 7.38 (5H, m), 8.02 - 8.17 (1H, m), 9.80 (1H, s), MS (ESI+): 425 (M+H).

Reference Example 34

4-(Benzyloxy)pentanoic acid

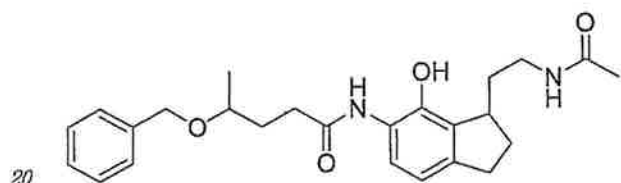


To a solution of 4-(benzyloxy)pentan-1-ol (350 mg, 1.80 mmol) in acetone (20 mL) was added Jones reagent (1.9M, 1.9 mL, 3.6 mmol) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 30 min. Sodium sulfite was added to the reaction solution, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residual aqueous solution was washed with ethyl acetate, acidified with 1N hydrochloric acid, and extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=20/80→40/60) to give the title compound (236 mg, yield 63%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.23 (3H, d, $J = 6.3$ Hz), 1.80 - 1.91 (2H, m), 2.48 (2H, t, $J = 7.4$ Hz), 3.51 - 3.65 (1H, m), 4.43 (1H, d, $J = 11.6$ Hz), 4.59 (1H, d, $J = 11.6$ Hz), 7.23 - 7.37 (5H, m), hidden (1H).

Reference Example 35

N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-4-(benzyloxy)pentanamide



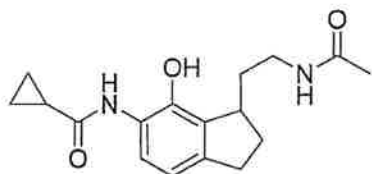
4-(Benzyloxy)pentanoic acid (230 mg, 1.10 mmol) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (10 mL), oxalyl chloride (90 μL , 1.05 mmol) and dimethylformamide (10 μL) were added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 30 min. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was diluted with dichloromethane (1 mL). This was added to a solution of N-[2-(6-amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (244 mg, 0.903 mmol) in pyridine (10 mL) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 min. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica

gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=80/20→100/0) to give the title compound (220 mg, yield 57%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.27 (3H, d, J = 6.0 Hz), 1.72 - 2.08 (8H, m), 2.13 - 2.30 (1H, m), 2.55 (2H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 2.64 - 2.76 (1H, m), 2.85 - 3.01 (1H, m), 3.04 - 3.22 (1H, m), 3.29 - 3.50 (2H, m), 3.61 - 3.75 (1H, m), 4.41 (1H, dd, J = 11.3, 1.8 Hz), 4.66 (1H, d, J = 11.3 Hz), 6.25 (1H, brs), 6.52 - 6.66 (2H, m), 7.22 - 7.38 (5H, m), 8.21 (1H, brs), 9.72 (1H, s),
MS (ESI⁺): 425 (M+H).

10 Reference Example 36

N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}cyclopropanecarboxamide

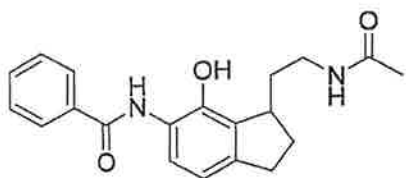


N-[2-(6-Amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.369 mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (4 mL), cyclopropylcarbonyl chloride (36.8 μL, 0.406 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 3 hr. Water was added to the reaction solution, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol=100/0→95/5) to give the title compound (119 mg, yield 100%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 0.77 - 0.94 (2H, m), 0.97 - 1.13 (2H, m), 1.20 - 1.33 (1H, m), 1.52 - 1.85 (2H, m), 1.90 - 2.10 (4H, m), 2.10 - 2.32 (1H, m), 2.63 - 2.78 (1H, m), 2.84 - 3.01 (1H, m), 3.02 - 3.19 (1H, m), 3.20 - 3.54 (2H, m), 6.58 (1H, s), 6.67 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.00 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 8.44 - 8.90 (1H, m), hidden (1H),
MS (ESI⁺): 303 (M+H).

30 Reference Example 37

N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}benzamide



N-[2-(6-Amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.369 mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (4 mL), benzoyl chloride (47.1 μ L, 0.406 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. Water was added to the reaction solution, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=80/20 $\rightarrow$ 100/0) to give the title compound (111 mg, yield 89%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.72 - 1.93 (3H, m), 2.05 (3H, s), 2.17 - 2.36 (1H, m), 2.68 - 2.84 (1H, m), 2.91 - 3.07 (1H, m), 3.19 - 3.47 (3H, m), 6.14 - 6.32 (1H, m), 6.79 (1H, d, J = 7.9 Hz), 7.45 - 7.62 (4H, m), 7.93 (2H, d, J = 8.1 Hz), 8.49 (1H, brs), 9.97 (1H, brs),

MS (ESI+): 339 (M+H).

Reference Example 38

N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-2-phenylacetamide



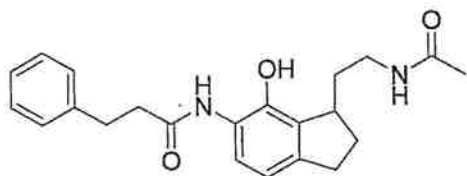
N-[2-(6-Amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.369 mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (4 mL), phenylacetyl chloride (53.5 μ L, 0.406 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. Water was added to the reaction solution, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The

residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=80/20→100/0) to give the title compound (31.0 mg, yield 24%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.71 - 1.85 (3H, m), 1.99 (3H, s), 2.12 - 2.27 (1H, m), 2.63 - 2.76 (1H, m), 2.84 - 3.00 (1H, m), 3.11 - 3.25 (1H, m), 3.29 - 3.41 (2H, m), 3.78 (2H, s), 6.16 (1H, brs), 6.65 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 6.90 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.28 - 7.44 (5H, m), 7.51 (1H, brs), 9.58 (1H, brs),
MS (ESI+): 353 (M+H).

10 Reference Example 39

N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-3-phenylpropanamide

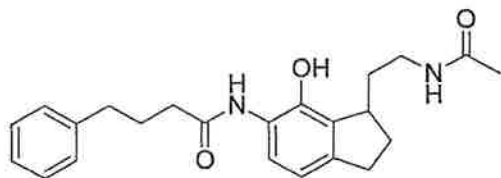


N-[2-(6-Amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.369 mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (4 mL), 3-phenylpropionyl chloride (60.3 μL, 0.406 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. Water was added to the reaction solution, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The
residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=80/20→100/0) to give the title compound (74.4 mg, yield 55%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.69 - 1.86 (3H, m), 2.00 (3H, s), 2.13 - 2.32 (1H, m), 2.66 - 2.78 (3H, m), 2.86 - 3.01 (1H, m), 3.06 (2H, t, J = 7.7 Hz), 3.13 - 3.27 (1H, m), 3.28 - 3.42 (2H, m), 6.31 (1H, brs), 6.68 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 6.99 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.17 - 7.35 (5H, m), 7.86 (1H, brs), 9.68 (1H, s),
MS (ESI+): 367 (M+H).

Reference Example 40

N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-4-phenylbutanamide

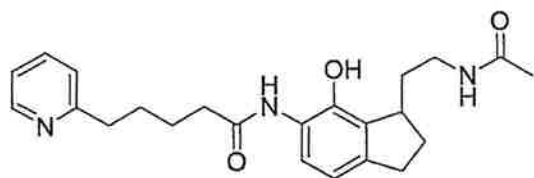


N-[2-(6-Amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.369 mmol) was dissolved in pyridine (4 mL), 4-phenylbutanoyl chloride (74.1 mg, 0.406 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. Water was added to the reaction solution, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=80/20→100/0) to give the title compound (96.8 mg, yield 69%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.73 - 1.88 (3H, m), 2.01 (3H, s), 2.06 - 2.31 (3H, m), 2.43 (2H, t, $J = 7.4$ Hz), 2.68 - 2.79 (3H, m), 2.89 - 3.03 (1H, m), 3.16 - 3.44 (3H, m), 6.16 - 6.30 (1H, m), 6.72 (1H, d, $J = 7.9$ Hz), 7.12 (1H, d, $J = 7.9$ Hz), 7.18 - 7.24 (3H, m), 7.27 - 7.34 (2H, m), 7.65 (1H, brs), 9.73 (1H, s), MS (ESI $^+$): 381 (M+H).

Reference Example 41

N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-5-pyridin-2-ylpentanamide



20

To 5-pyridin-2-ylpentanoic acid (72.8 mg, 0.406 mmol) was added thionyl chloride (0.4 mL), and the mixture was heated under reflux for 30 min. Thionyl chloride was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was diluted with pyridine (2 mL). The mixture was added to a solution of N-[2-(6-amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.369 mmol) in pyridine (2 mL) under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. Water was added, and the

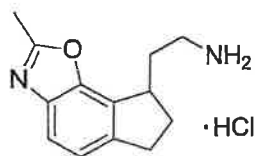
mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution and saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified
5 by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol=100/0→90/10) to give the title compound (37.7 mg, yield 26%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.71 - 1.92 (7H, m), 1.98 (3H, s), 2.14 - 2.30 (1H, m), 2.49 (2H, t, J = 6.9 Hz), 2.65 - 2.79 (1H, m), 2.79 -
10 3.03 (3H, m), 3.07 - 3.24 (1H, m), 3.29 - 3.49 (2H, m), 6.35 (1H, brs), 6.70 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.03 - 7.20 (3H, m), 7.56 - 7.65 (1H, m), 8.47 (1H, d, J = 5.8 Hz), 8.71 (1H, brs), hidden (1H).

MS (ESI⁺): 396 (M+H).

15 Reference Example 42

2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethanamine hydrochloride



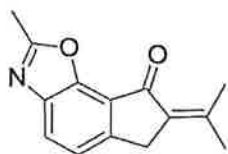
2-(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethanamine (610 mg, 2.85 mmol) was dissolved in methanol
20 (20 mL), a 10% palladium-carbon powder (61 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated. The residue was
25 dissolved in ethyl acetate, converted to hydrochloride with 4N hydrochloric acid/ethyl acetate solution, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. Purification by recrystallization (ethyl acetate/methanol) gave the title compound (105 mg, yield 15%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (DMSO-d_6) δ : 1.68 - 1.87 (2H, m), 2.25 - 2.43 (2H, m), 2.58 (3H, s), 2.81 - 3.08 (4H, m), 3.39 - 3.53 (1H, m), 7.18 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.43 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 8.04 (3H, brs),
MS (ESI+): 217 (M+H),

5 Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{17}\text{N}_2\text{ClO}\cdot 0.6\text{H}_2\text{O}$
Calcd. (%): C, 59.24; H, 6.95; N, 10.63
Found (%): C, 59.18; H, 6.77; N, 10.39.

Reference Example 43

2-Methyl-7-(1-methylethylidene)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-
10 d][1,3]oxazol-8-one



2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-one
(1.87 g, 10.0 mmol), acetone (3.68 mL, 50.0 mmol) and ICN
Alumina B (manufactured by ICN, Akt.1, 20 g) were suspended in
15 tetrahydrofuran (50 mL), and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for
9 hr. Acetone (3.68 mL, 50.0 mmol) was added, and the mixture
was further stirred for 12 hr. The reaction solution was
filtered, and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced
pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column
20 chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=10/90→50/50) to give the
title compound (742 mg, yield 33%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.03 (3H, s), 2.46 (3H, s), 2.71 (3H, s), 3.77
(2H, s), 7.36 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.82 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz),
melting point: 156 - 159°C (recrystallized from ethyl
25 acetate/hexane),

MS (ESI+): 228 (M+H),

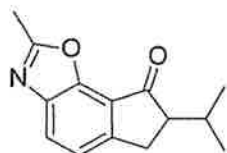
Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{13}\text{NO}_2$

Calcd. (%): C, 73.99; H, 5.76; N, 6.16

Found (%): C, 73.91; H, 5.69; N, 6.10.

30 Reference Example 44

7-Isopropyl-2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-
one

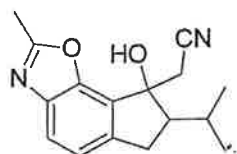


To a solution of 2-methyl-7-(1-methylethylidene)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-one (677 mg, 2.98 mmol) in methanol/ethyl acetate (5/15 mL) was added a palladium-carbon powder (68 mg), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 40 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off, and the filtrate was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to give the title compound (662 mg, yield 97%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 0.83 (3H, d, J = 6.9 Hz), 1.07 (3H, d, J = 7.1 Hz), 2.39 - 2.53 (1H, m), 2.70 (3H, s), 2.74 - 2.82 (1H, m), 3.06 (1H, dd, J = 17.6, 3.9 Hz), 3.28 (1H, dd, J = 17.6, 8.0 Hz), 7.37 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.85 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), MS (ESI⁺): 230 (M+H).

Reference Example 45

(8-Hydroxy-7-isopropyl-2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)acetonitrile



To a solution of 1,1,1,3,3,3-hexamethyldisilazane (917 mg, 5.68 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (10 mL) was added 1.6M butyllithium/hexane solution (3.55 mL, 5.68 mmol) at -78°C, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. Thereto was added a solution of acetonitrile (313 μL, 5.95 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (2 mL), and the mixture was stirred for 30 min. Then, a solution of 7-isopropyl-2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-one (650 mg, 2.84 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (2 mL) was added. After stirring for 30 min, the reaction solution was diluted with saturated aqueous ammonium chloride solution and ethyl acetate, washed with water and saturated brine and

dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=20/80→100/0) to give the title compound (614 mg, yield 80%).

5 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.03 (3H, d, $J = 6.6$ Hz), 1.21 (3H, d, $J = 6.6$ Hz), 2.06 - 2.18 (1H, m), 2.19 (1H, brs), 2.46 (1H, q, $J = 7.9$ Hz), 2.66 (3H, s), 2.96 (1H, dd, $J = 15.9, 8.2$ Hz), 3.16 - 3.30 (2H, m), 3.55 (1H, d, $J = 16.8$ Hz), 7.16 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.57 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz).

10 melting point: 149 - 152°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane),

MS (ESI+): 271 (M+H),

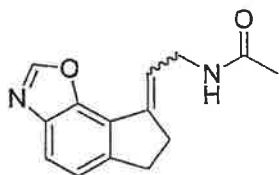
Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{18}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$

Calcd. (%): C, 71.09; H, 6.71; N, 10.36

15 Found (%): C, 71.00; H, 6.79; N, 10.35.

Example 1

N-[2-(6,7-Dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide



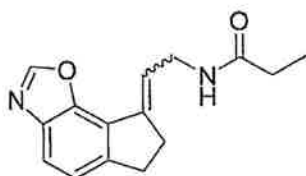
2-(6,7-Dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethanamine (30.0 mg, 0.148 mmol) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (1 mL), triethylamine (31.0 μL , 0.222 mmol) and acetic anhydride (16.8 μL , 0.178 mmol) were added under ice-
25 cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and washed with saturated brine. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified
30 by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl

acetate/methanol=100/0→95/5) to give the title compound (19.0 mg, yield 53%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.03 (3H, s), 2.87 - 2.96 (2H, m), 3.14 - 3.24 (2H, m), 4.10 (2H, dd, J = 6.9, 5.8 Hz), 5.62 (1H, brs), 6.28 - 6.37 (1H, m), 7.25 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.62 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 8.09 (1H, s),
MS (ESI+): 243 (M+H).

Example 2

N-[2-(6,7-Dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]propionamide



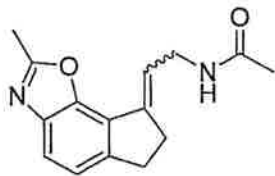
2-(6,7-Dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethanamine (30.0 mg, 0.148 mmol) was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (1 mL), triethylamine (31.0 μL, 0.222 mmol) and propionic anhydride (22.8 μL, 0.178 mmol) were added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and washed with saturated brine. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=50/50→100/0) to give the title compound (33.9 mg, yield 89%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.20 (3H, t, J = 7.7 Hz), 2.26 (2H, q, J = 7.7 Hz), 2.87 - 2.98 (2H, m), 3.14 - 3.24 (2H, m), 4.11 (2H, t, J = 6.3 Hz), 5.59 (1H, brs), 6.26 - 6.37 (1H, m), 7.25 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.62 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 8.09 (1H, s),
melting point: 148 - 150°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate),
MS (ESI+): 257 (M+H),
Elemental analysis: for C₁₅H₁₆N₂O₂
Calcd. (%): C, 70.29; H, 6.29; N, 10.93

Found (%): C, 69.97; H, 6.28; N, 10.96.

Example 3

N-[2-(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide



5

A half amount of 2-(2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethanamine obtained in Reference Example 19 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (6.9 mL), triethylamine (144 μ L, 1.04 mmol) and acetic anhydride (78.3 μ L, 0.828 mmol) were added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and washed with saturated brine. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol=100/0 $\rightarrow$ 95/5) to give the title compound (171 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 2.04 (3H, s), 2.67 (3H, s), 2.86 - 2.95 (2H, m), 3.12 - 3.21 (2H, m), 4.05 - 4.14 (2H, m), 5.58 (1H, brs), 6.22 - 6.35 (1H, m), 7.18 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.48 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz),

melting point: 188 - 190°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate), MS (ESI+): 257 (M+H),

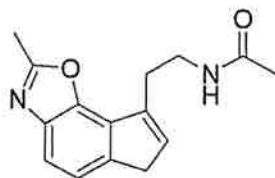
Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{16}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$

Calcd. (%): C, 70.29; H, 6.29; N, 10.93

Found (%): C, 70.17; H, 6.17; N, 10.54.

Example 4

N-[2-(2-Methyl-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide



N-[2-(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide (63.5 mg, 0.248 mmol) was dissolved in toluene (2.5 mL), sulfuric acid (24.3 μ L, 0.248 mmol) was added, and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 5 hr. To the reaction
5 solution was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and washed with saturated brine. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol=100/0 $\rightarrow$ 90/10) to give the
10 title compound (40.0 mg, yield 63%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.95 (3H, s), 2.68 (3H, s), 3.03 (2H, dt, J = 6.7, 1.5 Hz), 3.43 - 3.54 (2H, m), 3.64 - 3.76 (2H, m), 5.56 (1H, brs), 6.36 (1H, s), 7.40 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.49 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

15 melting point: 154 - 156°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 257 (M+H),

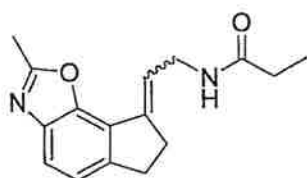
Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{16}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$

Calcd. (%): C, 70.29; H, 6.29; N, 10.93

20 Found (%): C, 70.16; H, 6.27; N, 11.03.

Example 5

N-[2-(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]propionamide



25 A half amount of 2-(2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethanamine obtained in Reference Example 19 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (6.9 mL), triethylamine (144 μ L, 1.04 mmol) and propionic anhydride (106 μ L, 0.828 mmol) were added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min.
30 To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution. The mixture was extracted with

ethyl acetate, washed with saturated brine and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=50/50→100/0) to give the title compound (140 mg).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.20 (3H, t, $J = 7.7$ Hz), 2.26 (2H, q, $J = 7.7$ Hz), 2.67 (3H, s), 2.85 - 2.95 (2H, m), 3.11 - 3.22 (2H, m), 4.11 (2H, t, $J = 6.3$ Hz), 5.61 (1H, brs), 6.23 - 6.32 (1H, m), 7.17 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.47 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz),

melting point: 214 - 216°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate), MS (ESI+): 271 (M+H),

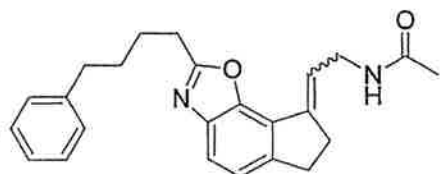
Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{18}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$,

Calcd. (%): C, 71.09; H, 6.71; N, 10.36

Found (%): C, 71.03; H, 6.65; N, 10.09.

Example 6

N-{2-[2-(4-Phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene]ethyl}acetamide



A half amount of 2-[2-(4-phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene]ethanamine obtained in Reference Example 20 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (1.9 mL), triethylamine (40.0 μL , 0.287 mmol) and acetic anhydride (21.7 μL , 0.229 mmol) were added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and washed with saturated brine. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=50/50→100/0) to give the title compound (43.0 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.72 - 1.85 (2H, m), 1.88 - 2.01 (2H, m), 2.03 (3H, s), 2.70 (2H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 2.84 - 2.94 (2H, m), 2.98 (2H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 3.11 - 3.21 (2H, m), 4.05 - 4.14 (2H, m), 5.60 (1H, brs), 6.20 - 6.31 (1H, m), 7.12 - 7.22 (4H, m), 7.23 - 7.33 (2H, m), 7.49 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

melting point: 113 - 115°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI⁺): 375 (M+H),

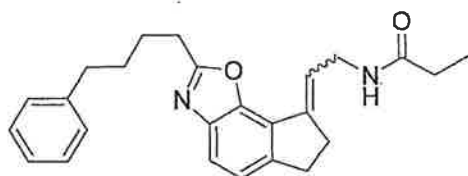
Elemental analysis: for C₂₄H₂₆N₂O₂

Calcd. (%): C, 76.98; H, 7.00; N, 7.48.

Found (%): C, 76.81; H, 6.99; N, 7.55.

Example 7

N-{2-[2-(4-Phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene]ethyl}propionamide



15

A half amount of 2-[2-(4-phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene]ethanamine obtained in Reference Example 20 was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (1.9 mL), triethylamine (40.0 μL, 0.287 mmol) and propionic anhydride (29.4 μL, 0.229 mmol) were added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and washed with saturated brine. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=30/70→70/30) to give the title compound (45.1 mg).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.20 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.71 - 1.85 (2H, m), 1.88 - 2.04 (2H, m), 2.25 (2H, q, J = 7.4 Hz), 2.70 (2H, t, J = 7.6 Hz), 2.85 - 2.95 (2H, m), 2.99 (2H, t, J = 7.6 Hz), 3.10 - 3.21 (2H, m), 4.07 - 4.15 (2H, m), 5.55 (1H, brs), 6.21 - 6.31

(1H, m), 7.13 - 7.22 (4H, m), 7.22 - 7.32 (2H, m), 7.49 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

melting point: 111 - 113°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

5 MS (ESI+): 389 (M+H),

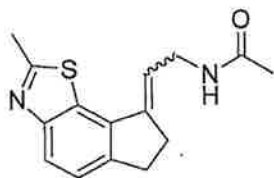
Elemental analysis: for C₂₅H₂₆N₂O₂

Calcd. (%): C, 77.29; H, 7.26; N, 7.21

Found (%): C, 77.10; H, 7.28; N, 7.35.

Example 8

10 N-[2-(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide



2-(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-ylidene)ethanamine obtained in Reference Example 21 was

15 dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (30 mL), triethylamine (314 µL, 2.25 mmol) and acetic anhydride (85 µL, 0.899 mmol) were added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 min. To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and washed with
20 saturated brine. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol=100/0→95/5) to give the title compound (76.0 mg, total yield from Reference Example 17
25 37%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 2.03 (3H, s), 2.87 (3H, s), 2.91 - 3.00 (2H, m), 3.13 - 3.21 (2H, m), 4.08 - 4.17 (2H, m), 5.57 (1H, brs), 5.80 - 5.91 (1H, m), 7.36 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.84 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz),

30 melting point: 184 - 186°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 273 (M+H),

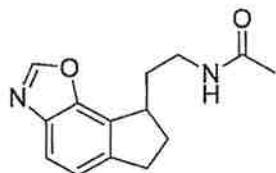
Elemental analysis: for C₁₅H₁₆N₂OS

Calcd. (%): C, 66.15; H, 5.92; N, 10.29

Found (%): C, 65.91; H, 5.83; N, 10.30.

5 **Example 9**

N-[2-(7,8-Dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide

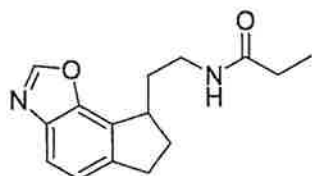


N-[2-(6,7-Dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide (19.0 mg, 0.0784 mmol) was dissolved in
10 methanol (1 mL), a 10% palladium-carbon powder (10 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced
15 pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol=90/10) to give the title compound (16.0 mg, yield 84%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.74 - 1.97 (2H, m), 1.99 (3H, s), 2.21 - 2.36 (1H, m), 2.39 - 2.54 (1H, m), 2.93 - 3.18 (2H, m), 3.27 - 3.41
20 (1H, m), 3.42 - 3.61 (2H, m), 5.56 (1H, brs), 7.23 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.59 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 8.03 (1H, s),
MS (ESI+): 245 (M+H).

Example 10

N-[2-(7,8-Dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide
25



N-[2-(6,7-Dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]propionamide (28.7 mg, 0.112 mmol) was dissolved

in methanol (1.1 mL), a 10% palladium-carbon powder (14 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced
5 pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=50/50→100/0) to give the title compound (25.6 mg, yield 88%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.16 (3H, t, $J = 7.6$ Hz), 1.75 - 1.99 (2H, m), 2.16 - 2.36 (3H, m), 2.38 - 2.53 (1H, m), 2.92 - 3.18 (2H, m),
10 3.28 - 3.42 (1H, m), 3.43 - 3.61 (2H, m), 5.55 (1H, brs), 7.23 (1H, d, $J = 8.2$ Hz), 7.58 (1H, d, $J = 8.2$ Hz), 8.03 (1H, s),
melting point: 89 - 90°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 259 (M+H),

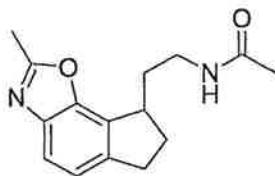
15 Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{18}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$

Calcd. (%): C, 69.74; H, 7.02; N, 10.84

Found (%): C, 69.68; H, 7.03; N, 10.98.

Example 11

N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide
20



N-[2-(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide (165 mg, 0.644 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (6.4 mL), a 10% palladium-carbon powder (82 mg) was
25 added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 12 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol=100/0→95/5) to give the
30 title compound (148 mg, yield 89%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.69 - 1.96 (2H, m), 1.99 (3H, s), 2.23 - 2.50 (2H, m), 2.63 (3H, s), 2.89 - 3.15 (2H, m), 3.28 - 3.56 (3H, m), 5.54 (1H, brs), 7.15 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.44 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

5 melting point: 93 - 95°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 259 (M+H),

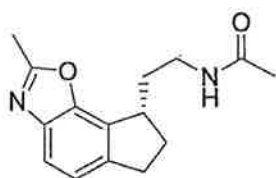
Elemental analysis: for C₁₅H₁₈N₂O₂

Calcd. (%): C, 69.74; H, 7.02; N, 10.84

10 Found (%): C, 69.77; H, 6.97; N, 10.95.

Example 12

(S)-N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide



15 Racemic N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide (768 mg, 3.00 mmol) was fractionated by high performance liquid chromatography (instrument: Prep LC 2000 (manufactured by Nihon Waters K.K.), column: CHIRALPAK AD (50 mmID × 500 mmL, manufactured by Daicel
20 Chemical Industries, Ltd.), mobile phase: hexane/ethanol/diethylamine=90/10/0.1, flow rate: 60 mL/min, column temperature: 30°C, sample concentration: 1.02 mg/mL, injection weight: 31 mg). A fraction containing an optically active compound having a shorter retention time under the above-
25 mentioned high performance liquid chromatography conditions was concentrated. The concentrate was re-dissolved in ethanol, and concentrated to dryness. Hexane was added again, and the mixture was concentrated to dryness to give the title compound (381 mg, 99.9%ee). Enantiomer excess (ee) was measured by high
30 performance liquid chromatography (column: CHIRALPAK AD (4.6 mmID × 250 mmL, manufactured by Daicel Chemical Industries,

Ltd.), mobile phase: hexane/ethanol/diethylamine=90/10/0.1, flow rate: 0.5 mL/min, column temperature: 30°C, sample concentration: 0.65 mg/mL (hexane/ethanol), injection volume: 10 µL).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.69 - 1.96 (2H, m), 1.99 (3H, s), 2.23 - 2.50 (2H, m), 2.63 (3H, s), 2.89 - 3.15 (2H, m), 3.28 - 3.56 (3H, m), 5.54 (1H, brs), 7.15 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.44 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

melting point: 111 - 113°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

10 MS (ESI+): 259 (M+H),

[α]_D²⁰: -53.4° (c 0.5035, methanol),

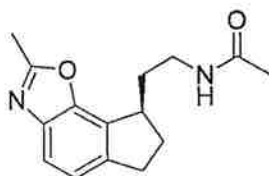
Elemental analysis: for C₁₅H₁₈N₂O₂

Calcd. (%): C, 69.74; H, 7.02; N, 10.84

Found (%): C, 69.53; H, 7.01; N, 10.96.

15 **Example 13**

(R)-N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide



By the method similar to Example 12, racemic N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide (768 mg, 3.00 mmol) was fractionated by high performance liquid chromatography (instrument: Prep LC 2000 (manufactured by Nihon Waters K.K.), column: CHIRALPAK AD (50 mmID × 500 mmL, manufactured by Daicel Chemical Industries, Ltd.), mobile phase: hexane/ethanol/diethylamine=90/10/0.1, flow rate: 60 mL/min, column temperature: 30°C, sample concentration: 1.02 mg/mL, injection weight: 31 mg). An optically active compound (381 mg, 99.7%ee) having a longer retention time under the above-mentioned high performance liquid chromatography conditions was obtained. Enantiomer excess (ee) was measured by high performance liquid chromatography (column: CHIRALPAK AD

(4.6 mmID × 250 mmL, manufactured by Daicel Chemical Industries, Ltd.), mobile phase: hexane/ethanol/diethylamine=90/10/0.1, flow rate: 0.5 mL/min, column temperature: 30°C, sample concentration: 0.65 mg/mL (hexane/ethanol), injection volume: 10μL).

5 $^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.69 - 1.96 (2H, m), 1.99 (3H, s), 2.23 - 2.50 (2H, m), 2.63 (3H, s), 2.89 - 3.15 (2H, m), 3.28 - 3.56 (3H, m), 5.54 (1H, brs), 7.15 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.44 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz),

melting point: 111 - 113°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 259 (M+H),

$[\alpha]_D^{20}$: +50.7° (c 0.5125, methanol),

Elemental analysis: for $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{18}\text{N}_2\text{O}_2$

Calcd. (%): C, 69.74; H, 7.02; N, 10.84

15 Found (%): C, 69.61; H, 7.01; N, 10.89.

Example 14

N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide



20 N-[2-(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]propionamide (135 mg, 0.499 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (5 mL), a 10% palladium-carbon powder (27 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2.5 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off

25 using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=50/50→100/0) to give the title compound (115 mg, yield 85%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.16 (3H, t, $J = 7.6$ Hz), 1.70 - 1.98 (2H, m),

30 2.15 - 2.51 (4H, m), 2.63 (3H, s), 2.88 - 3.15 (2H, m), 3.28 -

3.56 (3H, m), 5.54 (1H, brs), 7.14 (1H, d, $J = 7.7$ Hz), 7.44 (1H, d, $J = 7.7$ Hz),

melting point: 111 - 113°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

5 MS (ESI+): 273 (M+H),

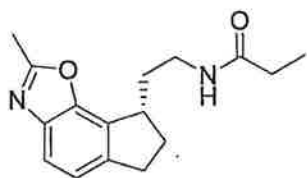
Elemental analysis: for $C_{16}H_{20}N_2O_2 \cdot 0.1H_2O$

Calcd. (%): C, 70.10; H, 7.43; N, 10.22

Found (%): C, 70.14; H, 7.28; N, 10.23.

Example 15

10 (S)-N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide



Racemic N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide (96 mg, 0.353 mmol) was
15 fractionated by high performance liquid chromatography (instrument: Prep LC 2000 (manufactured by Nihon Waters K.K.), column: CHIRALPAK AS (50 mmID $\times$ 500 mmL, manufactured by Daicel Chemical Industries, Ltd.), mobile phase: hexane/ethanol/diethylamine=94/6/0.1, flow rate: 60 mL/min,
20 column temperature: 30°C, sample concentration: 1.61 mg/mL, injection weight: 48 mg). A fraction containing an optically active compound having a shorter retention time under the above-mentioned high performance liquid chromatography conditions was concentrated. The concentrate was re-dissolved in ethanol, and
25 concentrated to dryness. Hexane was added again, and the mixture was concentrated to dryness to give the title compound (46 mg, 99.9%ee). Enantiomer excess (ee) was measured by high performance liquid chromatography (column: CHIRALPAK AS (4.6 mmID $\times$ 250 mmL, manufactured by Daicel Chemical Industries, Ltd.), mobile phase: hexane/ethanol/diethylamine=95/5/0.1, flow
30

rate: 0.5 mL/min, column temperature: 30°C, sample concentration: 0.62 mg/mL (hexane/ethanol), injection volume: 10 µL).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.16 (3H, t, J = 7.6 Hz), 1.70 - 1.98 (2H, m), 2.15 - 2.51 (4H, m), 2.63 (3H, s), 2.88 - 3.15 (2H, m), 3.28 - 3.56 (3H, m), 5.54 (1H, brs), 7.14 (1H, d, J = 7.7 Hz), 7.44 (1H, d, J = 7.7 Hz),

melting point: 129 - 131°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 273 (M+H),

¹⁰ [α]_D²⁰: -48.8° (c 0.535, methanol),

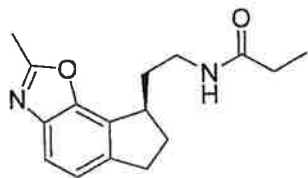
Elemental analysis: for C₁₆H₂₀N₂O₂

Calcd. (%): C, 70.56; H, 7.40; N, 10.29

Found (%): C, 70.40; H, 7.39; N, 10.34.

Example 16

¹⁵ (R)-N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide



By a method similar to Example 15, racemic N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide (96 mg, 0.353 mmol) was fractionated by high performance liquid chromatography (instrument: Prep LC 2000 (manufactured by Nihon Waters K.K.), column: CHIRALPAK AS (50 mmID × 500 mmL, manufactured by Daicel Chemical Industries, Ltd.), mobile phase: hexane/ethanol/diethylamine=94/6/0.1, flow rate: 60 mL/min, column temperature: 30°C, sample concentration: 1.61 mg/mL, injection weight: 48 mg). An optically active compound (45 mg, 99.7%ee) having a longer retention time under the above-mentioned high performance liquid chromatography conditions was obtained. Enantiomer excess (ee) was measured by high performance liquid chromatography (column: CHIRALPAK AS (4.6 mmID × 250 mmL, manufactured by Daicel Chemical Industries,

Ltd.), mobile phase: hexane/ethanol/diethylamine=95/5/0.1, flow rate: 0.5 mL/min, column temperature: 30°C, sample concentration: 0.62 mg/mL (hexane/ethanol), injection volume: 10 µL).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.16 (3H, t, J = 7.6 Hz), 1.70 - 1.98 (2H, m),
5 2.15 - 2.51 (4H, m), 2.63 (3H, s), 2.88 - 3.15 (2H, m), 3.28 -
3.56 (3H, m), 5.54 (1H, brs), 7.14 (1H, d, J = 7.7 Hz), 7.44
(1H, d, J = 7.7 Hz),

melting point: 129 - 131°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

10 MS (ESI⁺): 273 (M+H),

[α]_D²⁰: +48.2° (c 0.550, methanol),

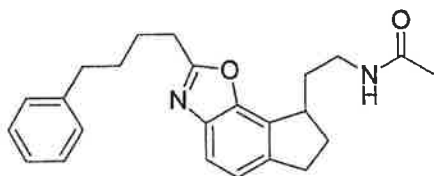
Elemental analysis: for C₁₆H₂₀N₂O₂

Calcd. (%): C, 70.56; H, 7.40; N, 10.29

Found (%): C, 70.30; H, 7.37; N, 10.31.

15 **Example 17**

N-{2-[2-(4-Phenylbutyl)-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-
8-yl]ethyl}acetamide



N-{2-[2-(4-Phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-

20 d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene]ethyl}acetamide (32.5 mg, 0.0868 mmol)

was dissolved in methanol (0.87 mL), a 10% palladium-carbon powder (6 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to give the title compound (29.8 mg, yield 91%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.70 - 2.01 (6H, m), 1.97 (3H, s), 2.16 - 2.32 (1H, m), 2.36 - 2.50 (1H, m), 2.69 (2H, t, J = 7.6 Hz), 2.90 -

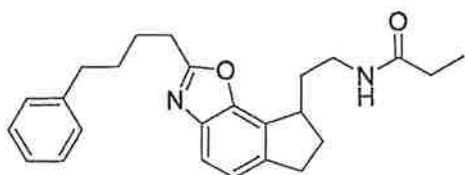
30 3.13 (4H, m), 3.26 - 3.39 (1H, m), 3.41 - 3.54 (2H, m), 5.52

(1H, brs), 7.12 - 7.22 (4H, m), 7.23 - 7.31 (2H, m), 7.46 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

MS (ESI+): 377 (M+H).

Example 18

5 N-{2-[2-(4-Phenylbutyl)-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl]ethyl}propionamide



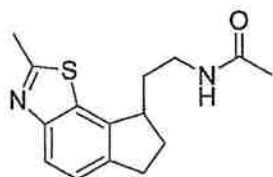
N-{2-[2-(4-Phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene]ethyl}propionamide (35.7 mg, 0.0919 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (0.92 mL), a 10% palladium-carbon powder (7 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=33/67) to give the title compound (31.2 mg, yield 87%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.15 (3H, t, J = 7.6 Hz), 1.71 - 2.00 (6H, m), 2.13 - 2.30 (3H, m), 2.34 - 2.52 (1H, m), 2.69 (2H, t, J = 7.6 Hz), 2.89 - 3.15 (4H, m), 3.27 - 3.41 (1H, m), 3.42 - 3.55 (2H, m), 5.51 (1H, brs), 7.11 - 7.21 (4H, m), 7.23 - 7.31 (2H, m), 7.46 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

MS (ESI+): 391 (M+H).

Example 19

25 N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide



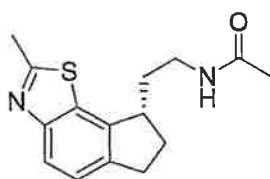
N-[2-(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide (61.0 mg, 0.224 mmol) was dissolved in

methanol (3 mL), a 10% palladium-carbon powder (10 mg) was added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol=100/0→95/5) to give the title compound (49.6 mg, yield 81%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.60 - 1.80 (1H, m), 1.84 - 2.06 (4H, m), 2.14 - 2.30 (1H, m), 2.34 - 2.51 (1H, m), 2.82 (3H, s), 2.88 - 3.18 (2H, m), 3.24 - 3.51 (3H, m), 5.62 (1H, brs), 7.30 (1H, d, $J = 8.2$ Hz), 7.76 (1H, d, $J = 8.2$ Hz),
MS (ESI+): 275 (M+H).

Example 20

(S)-N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide



Racemic N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide (1.00 g) was fractionated by high performance liquid chromatography (instrument: Prep LC 2000 (manufactured by Nihon Waters K.K.), column: CHIRALPAK AD (50 mmID $\times$ 500 mmL, manufactured by Daicel Chemical Industries, Ltd.), mobile phase: hexane/ethanol=90/10, flow rate: 80 mL/min, column temperature: 30°C, sample concentration: 10 mg/mL (hexane/ethanol=90/10), injection weight: 500 mg $\times$ 2). A fraction containing an optically active compound having a shorter retention time under the above-mentioned high performance liquid chromatography conditions was concentrated to give the title compound (504 mg, 99.9%ee). Enantiomer excess (ee) was measured by high performance liquid chromatography (column: CHIRALPAK AD (4.6 mmID $\times$ 250 mmL, manufactured by Daicel Chemical Industries, Ltd.), mobile phase:

hexane/ethanol=90/10, flow rate: 1.0 mL/min, column temperature: 30°C, sample concentration: 0.25 mg/mL (hexane/ethanol=90/10), injection volume: 10 µL).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.65 - 1.80 (1H, m), 1.88 - 2.06 (1H, m), 1.94 (3H, s), 2.14 - 2.29 (1H, m), 2.35 - 2.51 (1H, m), 2.83 (3H, s), 2.91 - 3.19 (2H, m), 3.24 - 3.52 (3H, m), 5.44 (1H, brs), 7.31 (1H, d, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J = 8.1 Hz),

melting point: 116 - 117°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 275 (M+H),

[α]_D²⁰: -133.0° (c 0.4480, methanol),

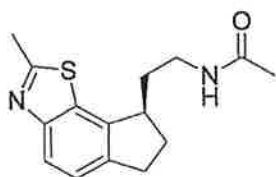
Elemental analysis: for C₁₅H₁₈N₂OS

Calcd. (%): C, 65.66; H, 6.61; N, 10.21

Found (%): C, 65.73; H, 6.76; N, 10.10.

Example 21

(R)-N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide



Racemic N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide (1.00 g) was fractionated by high performance liquid chromatography (instrument: Prep LC 2000 (manufactured by Nihon Waters K.K.), column: CHIRALPAK AD (50 mmID × 500 mmL, manufactured by Daicel Chemical Industries, Ltd.), mobile phase: hexane/ethanol=90/10, flow rate: 80 mL/min, column temperature: 30°C, sample concentration: 10 mg/mL (hexane/ethanol=90/10), injection weight: 500 mg × 2). A fraction containing an optically active compound having a longer retention time under the above-mentioned high performance liquid chromatography conditions was concentrated to give the title compound (492 mg, 99.9%ee). Enantiomer excess (ee) was measured by high performance liquid chromatography (column: CHIRALPAK AD

(4.6 mmID × 250 mmL, manufactured by Daicel Chemical Industries, Ltd.), mobile phase: hexane/ethanol=90/10, flow rate: 1.0 mL/min, column temperature: 30°C, sample concentration: 0.25 mg/mL (hexane/ethanol=90/10), injection volume: 10 µL).

5 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.67 - 1.80 (1H, m), 1.85 - 2.06 (1H, m), 1.95 (3H, s), 2.12 - 2.30 (1H, m), 2.35 - 2.51 (1H, m), 2.83 (3H, s), 2.91 - 3.18 (2H, m), 3.24 - 3.52 (3H, m), 5.46 (1H, brs), 7.31 (1H, d, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.77 (1H, d, J = 8.1 Hz),

melting point: 115 - 116°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl

10 acetate),

MS (ESI⁺): 275 (M+H),

[α]_D²⁰: +136.5° (c 0.5035, methanol),

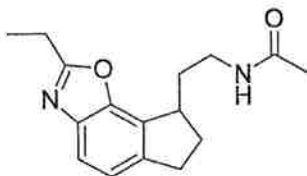
Elemental analysis: for C₁₅H₁₈N₂OS

Calcd. (%): C, 65.66; H, 6.61; N, 10.21

15 Found (%): C, 65.69; H, 6.77; N, 10.19.

Example 22

N-[2-(2-Ethyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide



20 N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}propanamide (88.5 mg, 0.305 mmol) and pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate (15.3 mg, 0.061 mmol) were heated under reflux in xylene (3.1 mL) for 2.5 hr. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel
25 column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=50/50→100/0) to give the title compound (69.8 mg, yield 84%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.46 (3H, t, J = 7.7 Hz), 1.71 - 1.96 (2H, m), 1.98 (3H, s), 2.20 - 2.34 (1H, m), 2.36 - 2.51 (1H, m), 2.96 (2H, q, J = 7.7 Hz), 2.98 - 3.15 (2H, m), 3.28 - 3.41 (1H, m),
30 3.42 - 3.57 (2H, m), 5.54 (1 H, brs), 7.15 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.46 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

melting point: 76 - 78°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 273 (M+H),

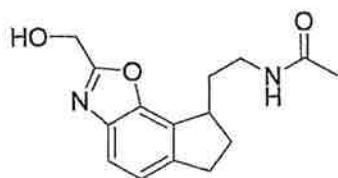
Elemental analysis: for C₁₆H₂₀N₂O₂

5 Calcd. (%): C, 70.56; H, 7.40; N, 10.29

Found (%): C, 70.25; H, 7.35; N, 10.33.

Example 23

N-{2-[2-(Hydroxymethyl)-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl]ethyl}acetamide



10

To a solution of N-(2-{2-[(benzyloxy)methyl]-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl}ethyl)acetamide (50.0 mg, 0.131 mmol) in methanol (1 mL) was added a 10% palladium-carbon powder (100 mg), and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 24 hr under a
15 hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (methanol/ethyl acetate=0/100→5/95) and recrystallized (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give the title compound (19.0 mg, yield 53%).

20 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.80 - 1.97 (2H, m), 1.99 (3H, s), 2.08 - 2.25 (1H, m), 2.36 - 2.51 (1H, m), 2.91 - 3.16 (2H, m), 3.33 - 3.61 (4H, m), 4.90 (2H, d, J = 5.5 Hz), 5.57 (1H, brs), 7.19 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.50 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

melting point: 132 - 134°C (ethyl acetate/hexane),

25 MS (ESI+): 275 (M+H),

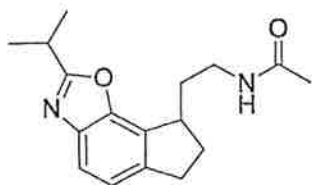
Elemental analysis: for C₁₅H₁₈N₂O₃

Calcd. (%): C, 65.68; H, 6.61; N, 10.21

Found (%): C, 65.54; H, 6.63; N, 10.11.

Example 24

30 N-[2-(2-Isopropyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide

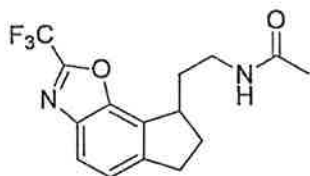


N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-2-methylpropanamide (118 mg, 0.369 mmol) and pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate (18.5 mg, 0.074 mmol) were heated
 5 under reflux in xylene (3.7 mL) for 5 hr. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (methanol/ethyl acetate=0/100→10/90) to give the title compound (60 mg, yield 57%).

10 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.46 (6H, dd, J = 6.9, 1.1 Hz), 1.72 - 1.95 (2H, m), 1.98 (3H, s), 2.16 - 2.33 (1H, m), 2.34 - 2.51 (1H, m), 2.86 - 3.61 (6H, m), 5.73 (1H, brs), 7.14 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.47 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), MS (ESI⁺): 287 (M+H).

15 **Example 25**

N-{2-[2-(Trifluoromethyl)-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl]ethyl}acetamide



N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-2,2,2-trifluoroacetamide (27.8 mg, 0.0842 mmol) and pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate (4.2 mg, 0.0168 mmol) were heated
 20 under reflux in xylene (1 mL) for 5 hr. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=50/50→100/0) to give the title compound (17.2 mg, yield 65%).

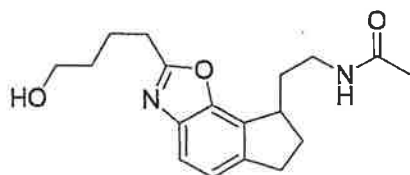
¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.72 - 1.88 (1H, m), 1.88 - 2.01 (1H, m), 2.00 (3H, s), 2.26 - 2.41 (1H, m), 2.43 - 2.57 (1H, m), 2.94 - 3.21

(2H, m), 3.31 - 3.64 (3H, m), 5.57 (1H, brs), 7.33 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.66 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz),
melting point: 114 - 116°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

5 MS (ESI+): 313 (M+H).

Example 26

N-{2-[2-(4-Hydroxybutyl)-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl]ethyl}acetamide

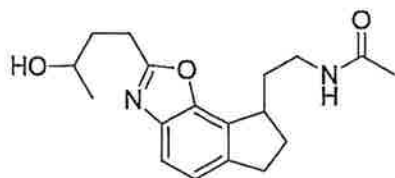


10 To a solution of N-(2-{2-[4-(benzyloxy)butyl]-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl}ethyl)acetamide (79.5 mg, 0.196 mmol) in methanol (2 mL) was added a 10% palladium-carbon powder (160 mg), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 6 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off,
15 and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (methanol/ethyl acetate=0/100→5/95) to give the title compound (50.0 mg, yield 81%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.67 - 2.08 (9H, m), 2.12 - 2.30 (1H, m), 2.33
20 - 2.51 (1H, m), 2.89 - 3.15 (4H, m), 3.25 - 3.58 (3H, m), 3.69 (2H, t, J = 6.3 Hz), 5.61 (1H, brs), 7.15 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.45 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), hidden (1H),
MS (ESI+): 317 (M+H).

Example 27

25 N-{2-[2-(3-Hydroxybutyl)-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl]ethyl}acetamide

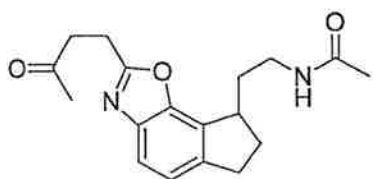


To a solution of N-(2-{2-[3-(benzyloxy)butyl]-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl}ethyl)acetamide (155 mg, 0.381 mmol) in methanol (4 mL) was added a 10% palladium-carbon powder (300 mg), and the mixture was stirred at 50°C for 4 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (methanol/ethyl acetate=0/100→5/95) to give the title compound (101 mg, yield 84%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.22 - 1.29 (3H, m), 1.65 - 2.29 (9H, m), 2.32 - 2.49 (1H, m), 2.86 - 3.15 (4H, m), 3.24 - 3.60 (3H, m), 3.79 - 4.04 (1H, m), 5.64 (1H, brs), 7.14 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.44 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),
MS (ESI+): 317 (M+H).

Example 28

N-{2-[2-(3-Oxobutyl)-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl]ethyl}acetamide



A suspension of N-{2-[2-(3-hydroxybutyl)-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl]ethyl}acetamide (72.0 mg, 0.228 mmol), 4Å molecular sieves (72 mg), 4-methylmorpholine N-oxide (66.8 mg, 0.570 mmol) and tetra-n-propylammonium perruthenate(VII) (8.0 mg, 0.0228 mmol) in acetonitrile (3 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 2 hr. To the reaction mixture was added water and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (methanol/ethyl acetate=0/100→5/95) and recrystallized (ethyl acetate/hexane) to give the title compound (22.2 mg, yield 31%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.72 - 1.96 (2H, m), 1.98 (3H, s), 2.17 - 2.33 (4H, m), 2.35 - 2.48 (1H, m), 2.88 - 3.13 (4H, m), 3.15 - 3.23 (2H, m), 3.25 - 3.37 (1H, m), 3.41 - 3.57 (2H, m), 5.63 (1H, brs), 7.14 (1H, d, J = 8.2 Hz), 7.40 - 7.45 (1H, m),

5 melting point: 111 - 112°C (ethyl acetate/hexane),

MS (ESI+): 315 (M+H),

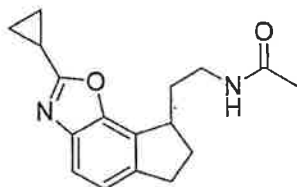
Elemental analysis: for C₁₈H₂₂N₂O₃

Calcd. (%): C, 68.77; H, 7.05; N, 8.91

Found (%): C, 68.66; H, 7.04; N, 8.92.

10 Example 29

N-[2-(2-Cyclopropyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide



N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}cyclopropanecarboxamide (119 mg, 0.369 mmol) and pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate (18.5 mg, 0.074 mmol) were heated under reflux in xylene (3.7 mL) for 5 hr. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (methanol/ethyl
15 acetate=0/100→10/90) to give the title compound (73 mg, yield 70%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.10 - 1.20 (2H, m), 1.21 - 1.29 (2H, m), 1.69 - 1.93 (2H, m), 1.98 (3H, s), 2.11 - 2.30 (2H, m), 2.31 - 2.49 (1H, m), 2.84 - 3.16 (2H, m), 3.25 - 3.57 (3H, m), 5.73 (1H, brs), 7.11 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.38 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),
25 melting point: 92 - 95°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 285 (M+H),

Elemental analysis: for C₁₇H₂₀N₂O₂

30 Calcd. (%): C, 71.81; H, 7.09; N, 9.85

Found (%): C, 71.69; H, 7.11; N, 9.79.

Example 30

N-[2-(2-Phenyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide



5 N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}benzamide (100 mg, 0.257 mmol) and pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate (12.9 mg, 0.0513 mmol) were heated under reflux in xylene (5 mL) for 2.5 hr. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel
10 column chromatography (NH, ethyl acetate/hexane=30/70→60/40) and recrystallized (ethyl acetate/diisopropyl ether) to give the title compound (67.5 mg, yield 82%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.76 - 1.97 (2H, m), 1.99 (3H, s), 2.31 - 2.57 (2H, m), 2.92 - 3.18 (2H, m), 3.37 - 3.66 (3H, m), 5.59 (1H,
15 brs), 7.21 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.50 - 7.60 (4H, m), 8.20 - 8.27 (2H, m),

melting point: 124 - 126°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate/diisopropyl ether),

MS (ESI⁺): 321 (M+H),

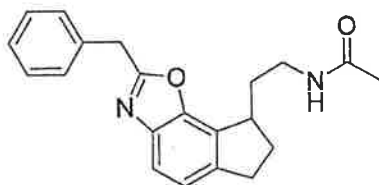
20 Elemental analysis: for C₂₀H₂₀N₂O₂

Calcd. (%): C, 74.98; H, 6.29; N, 8.74

Found (%): C, 74.86; H, 6.26; N, 8.83.

Example 31

N-[2-(2-Benzyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide
25



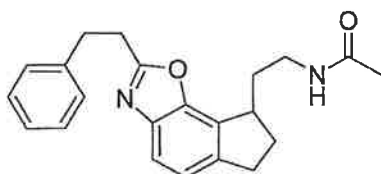
N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-2-phenylacetamide (29.0 mg, 0.0823 mmol) and pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate (4.1 mg, 0.0164 mmol) were heated under reflux in xylene (2 mL) for 2.5 hr. The solvent was
5 evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (NH, ethyl acetate/hexane=30/70→60/40) to give the title compound (7.7 mg, yield 28%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.73 - 1.91 (2H, m), 1.93 (3H, s), 2.07 - 2.21
10 (1H, m), 2.35 - 2.49 (1H, m), 2.87 - 3.14 (2H, m), 3.14 - 3.30 (1H, m), 3.37 - 3.52 (2H, m), 4.27 (2H, s), 5.45 (1H, brs), 7.15 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.26 - 7.40 (5H, m), 7.47 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

MS (ESI⁺): 335 (M+H).

15 **Example 32**

N-{2-[2-(2-Phenylethyl)-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl]ethyl}acetamide



N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-3-phenylpropanamide (72.5 mg, 0.198 mmol) and
20 pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate (12.4 mg, 0.0493 mmol) were heated under reflux in xylene (5 mL) for 2.5 hr. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (NH, ethyl
25 acetate/hexane=30/70→60/40) and recrystallized (ethyl acetate/diisopropyl ether) to give the title compound (19.8 mg, yield 29%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.69 - 1.96 (2H, m), 1.98 (3H, s), 2.15 - 2.31
(1H, m), 2.35 - 2.50 (1H, m), 2.88 - 3.15 (2H, m), 3.16 - 3.39
30 (5H, m), 3.39 - 3.54 (2H, m), 5.49 (1H, brs), 7.16 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.20 - 7.35 (5H, m), 7.47 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

melting point: 85 - 87°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate/diisopropyl ether),

MS (ESI+): 349 (M+H),

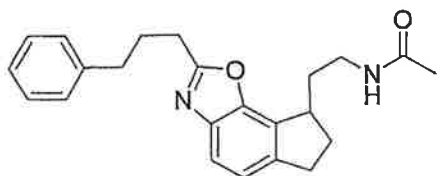
Elemental analysis: for C₂₂H₂₄N₂O₂

5 Calcd. (%): C, 75.83; H, 6.94; N, 8.04

Found (%): C, 75.54; H, 6.93; N, 8.10.

Example 33

N-{2-[2-(3-Phenylpropyl)-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl]ethyl}acetamide



10

N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-4-phenylbutanamide (90.0 mg, 0.237 mmol) and pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate (11.9 mg, 0.0475 mmol) were heated under reflux in xylene (5 mL) for 2.5 hr. The solvent was
15 evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (NH, ethyl acetate/hexane=30/70→60/40) and recrystallized (ethyl acetate/diisopropyl ether) to give the title compound (70.9 mg, yield 83%).

20 ¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.70 - 1.94 (2H, m), 1.96 (3H, s), 2.16 - 2.33 (3H, m), 2.35 - 2.50 (1H, m), 2.77 (2H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 2.89 - 3.13 (4H, m), 3.27 - 3.55 (3H, m), 5.53 (1H, brs), 7.15 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.17 - 7.35 (5H, m), 7.46 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

melting point: 95 - 97°C (recrystallized from ethyl

25 acetate/diisopropyl ether),

MS (ESI+): 363 (M+H),

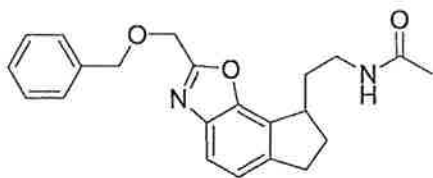
Elemental analysis: for C₂₃H₂₆N₂O₂

Calcd. (%): C, 76.21; H, 7.23; N, 7.73

Found (%): C, 76.08; H, 7.20; N, 7.83.

30 **Example 34**

N-(2-{2-[(Benzyloxy)methyl]-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl}ethyl)acetamide



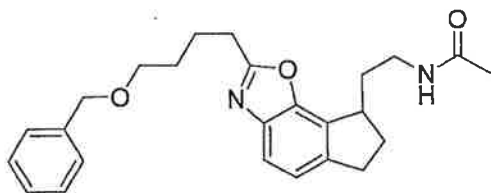
N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-2-(benzyloxy)acetamide (280 mg, 0.732 mmol) and pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate (36.6 mg, 0.146 mmol) were heated under reflux in xylene (15 mL) for 2.5 hr. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (NH, ethyl acetate/hexane=30/70→60/40) to give the title compound (62.8 mg, yield 23%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.75 - 1.94 (2H, m), 1.95 (3H, s), 2.20 - 2.34 (1H, m), 2.37 - 2.51 (1H, m), 2.93 - 3.15 (2H, m), 3.24 - 3.38 (1H, m), 3.41 - 3.58 (2H, m), 4.70 (2H, s), 4.78 (2H, s), 5.62 (1H, brs), 7.21 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.28 - 7.42 (5H, m), 7.54 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

MS (ESI⁺): 365 (M+H).

Example 35

N-(2-{2-[4-(Benzyloxy)butyl]-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl}ethyl)acetamide



N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-5-(benzyloxy)pentanamide (100 mg, 0.236 mmol) and pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate (11.8 mg, 0.0471 mmol) were heated under reflux in xylene (5 mL) for 2.5 hr. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (NH, ethyl

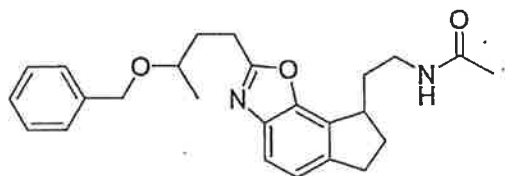
acetate/hexane=30/70→60/40) to give the title compound (87.0 mg, yield 91%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.70 - 1.93 (4H, m), 1.93 - 2.07 (5H, m), 2.18 - 2.32 (1H, m), 2.35 - 2.51 (1H, m), 2.89 - 3.14 (4H, m), 3.24 - 3.39 (1H, m), 3.40 - 3.58 (4H, m), 4.50 (2H, s), 5.55 (1H, brs), 7.14 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.22 - 7.38 (5H, m), 7.45 (1H, dd, J = 8.0, 0.8 Hz),

MS (ESI⁺): 407 (M+H).

Example 36

10 N-(2-{2-[3-(Benzyloxy)butyl]-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl}ethyl)acetamide



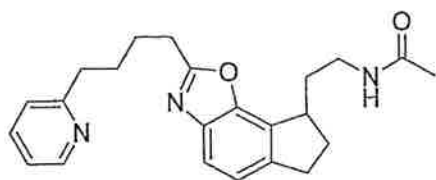
N-{3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl}-4-(benzyloxy)pentanamide (210 mg, 0.495 mmol) and
15 pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate (24.8 mg, 0.0991 mmol) were heated under reflux in xylene (10 mL) for 14 hr. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (NH, ethyl acetate/hexane=30/70→60/40) to give the title compound (162 mg,
20 yield 81%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.28 (3H, d, J = 6.0 Hz), 1.66 - 2.00 (5H, m), 2.01 - 2.32 (3H, m), 2.33 - 2.49 (1H, m), 2.87 - 3.16 (4H, m), 3.19 - 3.56 (3H, m), 3.62 - 3.74 (1H, m), 4.42 (1H, dd, J = 11.6, 5.2 Hz), 4.59 (1H, dd, J = 11.6, 5.7 Hz), 5.56 (1H, brs),
25 7.14 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.18 - 7.34 (5H, m), 7.45 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

MS (ESI⁺): 407 (M+H).

Example 37

30 N-{2-[2-(4-Pyridin-2-ylbutyl)-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl]ethyl}acetamide

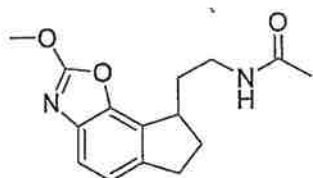


N-[3-[2-(Acetylamino)ethyl]-4-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-5-yl]-5-pyridin-2-ylpentanamide (37.7 mg, 0.0953 mmol) and pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate (4.8 mg, 0.0191 mmol) were heated
 5 under reflux in xylene (1 mL) for 1.5 hr. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution and saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel
 10 column chromatography (NH, ethyl acetate/hexane=30/70→80/20) to give the title compound (20.9 mg, yield 58%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.74 - 2.02 (6H, m), 1.96 (3H, s), 2.18 - 2.33 (1H, m), 2.35 - 2.51 (1H, m), 2.81 - 3.14 (6H, m), 3.25 - 3.40 (1H, m), 3.40 - 3.56 (2H, m), 5.94 (1H, brs), 7.06 - 7.19 (3H, m),
 15 7.44 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.58 (1H, td, J = 7.7, 1.9 Hz), 8.42 - 8.53 (1H, m),
 MS (ESI⁺): 378 (M+H).

Example 38

N-[2-(2-Methoxy-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide
 20



N-[2-(6-Amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.369 mmol) and tetramethoxymethane (151 mg, 1.11 mmol) were heated under reflux
 25 in tetrahydrofuran (3.7 mL) for 2 hr. The reaction solution was diluted with ethyl acetate and saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution, washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated

under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol=100/0→95/5) to give the title compound (58.4 mg, yield 58%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.72 - 1.94 (2H, m), 1.98 (3H, s), 2.13 - 2.29 (1H, m), 2.31 - 2.48 (1H, m), 2.85 - 3.12 (2H, m), 3.23 - 3.37 (1H, m), 3.37 - 3.55 (2H, m), 4.21 (3H, s), 5.57 (1H, brs), 7.09 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.29 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

melting point: 126 - 128°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 275 (M+H),

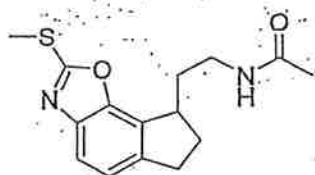
10 Elemental analysis: for C₁₅H₁₉N₂O₃

Calcd. (%): C, 65.68; H, 6.61; N, 10.21

Found (%): C, 65.56; H, 6.48; N, 10.22.

Example 39

N-{2-[2-(Methylthio)-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl]ethyl}acetamide



N-[2-(2-Mercapto-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide (108 mg, 0.391 mmol) was dissolved in N,N-dimethylformamide (4 mL), iodomethane (48.6 μL, 0.782 mmol) and potassium carbonate (59.4 mg, 0.430 mmol) were added, and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 15 min. The reaction solution was diluted with diethyl ether, washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution and saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=50/50→100/0) to give the title compound (81.2 mg, yield 72%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.72 - 1.94 (2H, m), 1.98 (3H, s), 2.16 - 2.34 (1H, m), 2.35 - 2.49 (1H, m), 2.76 (3H, s), 2.88 - 3.13 (2H, m),

3.27 - 3.54 (3H, m), 5.60 (1H, brs), 7.13 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),
7.40 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

melting point: 115 - 117°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl
acetate),

5 MS (ESI+): 291 (M+H),

Elemental analysis: for C₁₅H₁₈N₂O₂S

Calcd. (%): C, 62.04; H, 6.25; N, 9.65

Found (%): C, 61.80; H, 6.16; N, 9.49.

Example 40

10 N-{2-[2-(Dimethylamino)-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-
8-yl]ethyl}acetamide



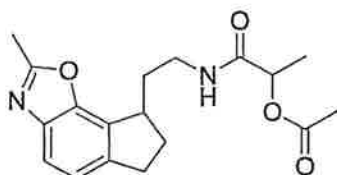
N-[2-(6-Amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-
yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.369 mmol) was
15 suspended in dichloromethane (3.7 mL), triethylamine (51.5 µg,
0.369 mmol) was added at room temperature, and the mixture was
stirred for 15 min. Thereto was added
dichloromethylenedimethyliminium chloride (59.9 mg, 0.369 mmol),
and the mixture was heated under reflux for 1 hr. To the
20 reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium
hydrogencarbonate solution. The mixture was diluted with ethyl
acetate, washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous
sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced
pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column
25 chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol=100/0→90/10) to give the
title compound (7.4 mg, yield 7%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.73 - 1.92 (2H, m), 1.96 (3H, s), 2.11 - 2.26
(1H, m), 2.30 - 2.45 (1H, m), 2.81 - 3.10 (2H, m), 3.20 (6H, s),
3.27 - 3.55 (3H, m), 5.50 (1 H, brs), 7.00 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),
30 7.16 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

MS (ESI+): 288 (M+H).

Example 41

1-Methyl-2-{[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]amino}-2-oxoethyl acetate



5 2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethanamine hydrochloride (150 mg, 0.593 mmol) and triethylamine (166 μ L, 1.19 mmol) were dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (5 mL), 2-chloro-1-methyl-2-oxoethyl acetate (108 mg, 0.712 mmol) was added, and the mixture was stirred at
10 room temperature for 30 min. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=70/30 $\rightarrow$ 100/0) to give the title compound (78.4 mg, yield 40%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.47 (3H, d, $J = 6.9$ Hz), 1.73 - 1.99 (2H, m),
15 2.11 - 2.16 (3H, m), 2.18 - 2.32 (1H, m), 2.34 - 2.51 (1H, m), 2.63 (3H, s), 2.88 - 3.16 (2H, m), 3.27 - 3.59 (3H, m), 5.08 - 5.28 (1H, m), 6.25 (1H, brs), 7.15 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.44 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz),

MS (ESI $^+$): 331 (M+H).

Example 42

2-Hydroxy-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propanamide



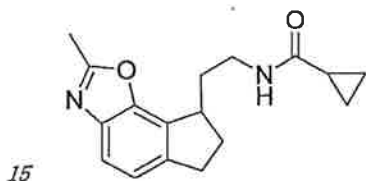
To a solution of 1-methyl-2-{[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]amino}-2-oxoethyl acetate
25 (70 mg, 0.212 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (2 mL) was added 1N aqueous sodium hydroxide solution (2 mL), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hr. The solvent was

evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (methanol/ethyl acetate) to give the title compound (52.4 mg, yield 86%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.44 (3H, dd, $J = 6.7, 3.7$ Hz), 1.73 - 1.99 (2H, m), 2.21 - 2.52 (3H, m), 2.63 (3H, s), 2.88 - 3.16 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.60 (3H, m), 4.15 - 4.31 (1H, m), 6.60 (1H, brs), 7.14 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.43 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz),
MS (ESI+): 289 (M+H).

Example 43

N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]cyclopropanecarboxamide



2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethanamine hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.396 mmol) and triethylamine (111 μL , 0.792 mmol) were dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (4 mL), cyclopropanecarbonyl chloride (43.1 μL , 0.475 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=40/60 $\rightarrow$ 80/20) to give the title compound (47.6 mg, yield 42%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 0.65 - 0.77 (2H, m), 0.90 - 1.02 (2H, m), 1.23 - 1.36 (1H, m), 1.70 - 1.98 (2H, m), 2.21 - 2.50 (2H, m), 2.63 (3H, s), 2.88 - 3.15 (2H, m), 3.30 - 3.59 (3H, m), 5.68 (1H, brs), 7.15 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.44 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz),

melting point: 134 - 137°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 285 (M+H),

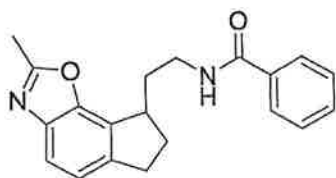
Elemental analysis: for C₁₇H₂₀N₂O₂

5 Calcd. (%): C, 71.81; H, 7.09; N, 9.85

Found (%): C, 71.55; H, 7.07; N, 9.64.

Example 44

N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]benzamide



10

2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethanamine hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.396 mmol) and triethylamine (111 µL, 0.792 mmol) were dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (4 mL), benzoyl chloride (55.1 µL, 0.475 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl

15

20 acetate/hexane=20/80→60/40) to give the title compound (55.6 mg, yield 44%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.88 - 2.05 (2H, m), 2.28 - 2.56 (2H, m), 2.61 (3H, s), 2.89 - 3.17 (2H, m), 3.47 - 3.64 (2H, m), 3.65 - 3.80 (1H, m), 6.25 (1H, brs), 7.16 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.36 - 7.54 (4H, m), 7.66 - 7.78 (2H, m),

25

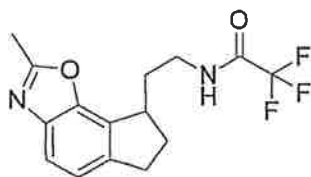
melting point: 73 - 76°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI+): 321 (M+H).

Example 45

30

2,2,2-Trifluoro-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide



2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethanamine hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.396 mmol) and triethylamine (111 μ L, 0.792 mmol) were dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (4 mL), trifluoroacetic anhydride (82.1 μ L, 0.594 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15 min. To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate/hexane=10/90 $\rightarrow$ 30/70) and recrystallized (hexane/ethyl acetate) to give the title compound (16.6 mg, yield 13%).

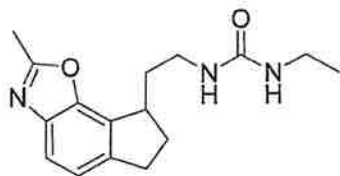
$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 1.82 - 2.01 (2H, m), 2.22 - 2.37 (1H, m), 2.38 - 2.53 (1H, m), 2.64 (3H, s), 2.90 - 3.18 (2H, m), 3.32 - 3.69 (3H, m), 6.46 (1H, brs), 7.16 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.46 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz),

melting point: 104 - 106°C (recrystallized from hexane/ethyl acetate),

MS (ESI $^+$): 313 (M+H).

Example 46

1-Ethyl-3-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]urea



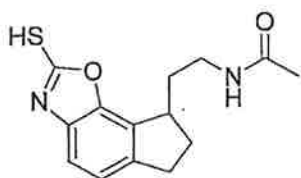
2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethanamine hydrochloride (156 mg, 0.617 mmol) and triethylamine (86.1 μ L, 0.617 mmol) were dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (6.2 mL), ethyl isocyanate (58.6 μ L, 0.741 mmol) was added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 15

min. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to give the title compound (20.2 mg, yield 11%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.15 (3H, t, J = 7.1 Hz), 1.69 - 1.96 (2H, m),
5 2.20 - 2.34 (1H, m), 2.34 - 2.51 (1H, m), 2.63 (3H, s), 2.88 -
3.13 (2H, m), 3.14 - 3.58 (5H, m), 4.16 (1H, brs), 4.31 (1H,
brs), 7.14 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.44 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),
melting point: 136 - 138°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate),
MS (ESI+): 288 (M+H).

10 Example 47

N-[2-(2-Mercapto-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide

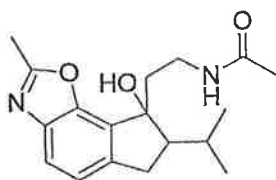


N-[2-(6-Amino-7-hydroxy-2,3-dihydro-1H-inden-1-yl)ethyl]acetamide hydrochloride (100 mg, 0.369 mmol) and
15 potassium O-ethyl dithiocarbonate (65.1 mg, 0.406 mmol) were
heated under reflux in pyridine (1 mL) for 2 hr. The reaction
solution was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with 1N
hydrochloric acid and saturated brine and dried over anhydrous
20 sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced
pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column
chromatography (ethyl acetate/methanol=100/0→90/10) to give the
title compound (64.8 mg, yield 64%).

¹H-NMR (DMSO-d₆) δ: 1.42 - 1.60 (1H, m), 1.68 - 1.79 (1H, m),
25 1.79 (3H, s), 2.13 - 2.37 (2H, m), 2.76 - 3.01 (2H, m), 3.10 -
3.20 (2H, m), 3.34 - 3.45 (1H, m), 7.00 (1H, d, J = 7.7 Hz),
7.13 (1H, d, J = 7.7 Hz), 7.92 (1H, brs), hidden (1H),
MS (ESI+): 277 (M+H).

Example 48

30 N-[2-(8-Hydroxy-7-isopropyl-2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-
d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide



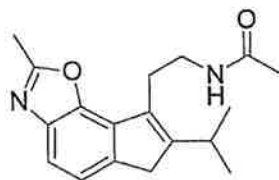
To a solution of (8-hydroxy-7-isopropyl-2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)acetonitrile (584 mg, 2.16 mmol) in ethanol (11 mL) were added Raney cobalt (5.84 g) and 2M ammonia/ethanol solution (11 mL), and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hr under a hydrogen atmosphere. The catalyst was filtered off using celite, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (11 mL), triethylamine (82.9 μ L, 0.594 mmol) and acetic anhydride (51.0 μ L, 0.540 mmol) were added under ice-cooling, and the mixture was stirred for 5 min. To the reaction solution was added saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution, and the solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (methanol/ethyl acetate=0/100 $\rightarrow$ 10/90) to give the title compound (132 mg, yield 19%).

$^1\text{H-NMR}$ (CDCl_3) δ : 0.80 (3H, d, $J = 6.6$ Hz), 1.10 (3H, d, $J = 6.9$ Hz), 1.91 (3H, s), 2.10 - 2.42 (4H, m), 2.65 (3H, s), 2.87 - 2.98 (1H, m), 3.00 - 3.13 (1H, m), 3.21 - 3.38 (1H, m), 3.39 - 3.54 (1H, m), 5.90 (1H, brs), 7.12 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), 7.51 (1H, d, $J = 8.0$ Hz), hidden (1H),

MS (ESI $^+$): 317 (M+H).

Example 49

N-[2-(7-Isopropyl-2-methyl-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide



To a solution of N-[2-(8-hydroxy-7-isopropyl-2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide (132

mg, 0.417 mmol) in toluene (4.2 mL) were added p-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (396 mg, 2.08 mmol) and magnesium sulfate (1 g), and the mixture was stirred at 100°C for 1 hr. The reaction solution was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with saturated aqueous sodium hydrogencarbonate solution and saturated brine and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solvent was evaporated under reduced pressure, and the residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (NH, ethyl acetate/hexane=30/70→100/0) to give the title compound (76.1 mg, yield 61%).

¹H-NMR (CDCl₃) δ: 1.20 (6H, d, J = 6.9 Hz), 1.90 (3H, s), 2.67 (3H, s), 2.97 (2H, t, J = 6.3 Hz), 3.03 - 3.15 (1H, m), 3.46 (2H, s), 3.56 - 3.66 (2H, m), 5.56 (1H, brs), 7.35 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.41 (1H, d, J = 8.0 Hz),

melting point: 135 - 138°C (recrystallized from ethyl acetate/hexane),

MS (ESI+): 299 (M+H),

Elemental analysis: for C₁₈H₂₂N₂O₂

Calcd. (%): C, 72.46; H, 7.43; N, 9.39

Found (%): C, 72.42; H, 7.54; N, 9.41.

Formulation Example 1

(1) Compound obtained in Example 1	10.0 g
(2) Lactose	60.0 g
(3) Cornstarch	35.0 g
(4) Gelatin	3.0 g
(5) Magnesium stearate	2.0 g

A mixture of the compound (10.0 g) obtained in Example 1, lactose (60.0 g) and cornstarch (35.0 g) is granulated using 10 wt% aqueous gelatin solution (30 mL) (3.0 g as gelatin) by passing a 1 mm mesh sieve, dried at 40°C and sieved again. The obtained granules are mixed with magnesium stearate (2.0 g) and the mixture is compressed. The obtained core tablets are coated with a sugar coating using an aqueous suspension of saccharose,

titanium dioxide, talc and gum arabic. The coated tablets are glazed with bees wax to give 1000 coated tablets.

Formulation Example 2

	(1) Compound obtained in Example 1	10.0 g
5	(2) Lactose	70.0 g
	(3) Cornstarch	50.0 g
	(4) Soluble starch	7.0 g
	(5) Magnesium stearate	3.0 g

The compound (10.0 g) obtained in Example 1 and magnesium
10 stearate (3.0 g) are granulated using aqueous soluble starch
solution (70 mL) (7.0 g as soluble starch), dried and mixed with
lactose (70.0 g) and cornstarch (50.0 g). The mixture is
compressed to give 1000 tablets.

15 Experimental Example 1

Melatonin receptor binding assay

(1) Preparation of CHO-hMelR7 cells expressing human melatonin 1
receptors

A cDNA fragment (SEQ ID NO: 1) encoding full-length of
20 human melatonin 1 receptors (human MT₁ receptors) was
incorporated into expression vector pAKKO-111H (former name
pAKKO1.11H; Biochim Biophys Acta. Vol. 1219(2), pp. 251-259,
1994) to give plasmid pAKKO-hMelR7 for animal cell expression.
CHO/dhfr-cells (ATCC, #CRL-9096) were plated at a concentration
25 of 0.3×10^6 cells/dish in a 6 cm culture dish (Becton
Dickinson), and cultured under the conditions of 37°C, 5% CO₂ for
48 hr. The cells were transfected with pAKKO-hMelR7 plasmid DNA
(5 µg) using Cellpfect Transfection Kit (Amersham, #27-9268-01).
The transfected cells were cultured in Dulbecco's modified Eagle
30 medium (DMEM) (Sigma, #D6046) containing 10% dialyzed FBS
(Biowest, #S180D), 1x Non-Essential Amino Acid (Invitrogen,
#11140-050) and 50 µg/mL Gentamycin (Invitrogen, #15750-060),
and the cell line that stably expressed the plasmid gene was
selected. By a receptor binding assay using 2-[¹²⁵I]

Iodomelatonin, CHO-hMelR7 cell line showing specific binding of 2-[¹²⁵I] Iodomelatonin was selected from the obtained clones.

(2) Preparation of CHO-hMT2 cells expressing human melatonin 2 receptors

5 A cDNA fragment (SEQ ID NO: 2) encoding full-length of human melatonin 2 receptors (human MT₂ receptors) was incorporated into expression vector pCMV-Script (Stratagene, #212220) to give the plasmid that was pCMV-human MT₂ receptors expression vector for animal cell expression. CHO-K1 cells
10 (ATCC, #CCL-61) were plated at the concentration of 1.5×10^5 cells/cm² in a 6 well plate (ASAHI TECHNO GLASS), and cultured under the conditions of 37°C, 5% CO₂ for 24 hr. For gene transfection, solution obtained by blending pCMV-human MT₂ receptors expression vector (1.9 µg), Lipofectamine Transfection
15 Reagent (Invitrogen, #18324-012) (11.3 µL) and Minimum Essential Medium Eagle (MEM) medium (Sigma, M8042) (93.8 µL), and reacting at room temperature for 20 min was added to the cells per one well. The transfected cells were cultured in MEM medium containing 10% FBS (Life Technology) and 300 µg/mL Geneticin
20 (GIBCO, #10131), and the cell line that stably expressed the plasmid gene was selected. By a receptor binding assay using 2-[¹²⁵I] Iodomelatonin, CHO-hMT2 cell line showing specific binding of 2-[¹²⁵I] Iodomelatonin was selected from the obtained clones.

(3) Preparation of cell membrane fraction of CHO cell (CHO-hMelR7 and CHO-hMT2) stably expressing human MT₁ and MT₂
25 receptors

CHO-hMelR7 and CHO-hMT2 cells were plated using Cellfactory (Nunc, #170009) under the conditions of 1×10^8 cells/2000 mL/flask. The cells were grown to confluent, and
30 recovered by the following method. As the medium for CHO-hMelR7 and CHO-hMT2, MEM α containing 10% FBS and penicillin/streptomycin was used. 300 ng/mL of geneticin was added to the medium for CHO-hMT2.

The medium was discarded, cells were washed twice with 200 mL of EDTA/PBS(-), 200 mL of EDTA/PBS(-) was further added, and the cells were stood still at room temperature for 20 min until they were released. The cells were recovered in four 50 mL
5 tubes (Becton Dickinson, #352070), and centrifuged at 1,500 rpm for 10 min at 4°C using a low speed cooling centrifuge (Hitachi, CF7D2). The supernatant was discarded, the pellets in the four tubes were suspended in 10 mL of PBS(-), and combined in one tube (Becton Dickinson, #352070). The mixture was further
10 centrifuged at 1,500 rpm for 10 min at 4°C, and the obtained pellets were suspended in 20 mL of ice-cooled homogenizing buffer [10 mM NaHCO₃, 5 mM EDTA, Protease inhibitor Complete (Roche), pH 7.4]. The cell suspension was homogenized 3 times using a polytron homogenizer at 20,000 rpm for 30 sec. The
15 obtained homogenate was centrifuged (2,000 rpm, 10 min, 4°C) using a low speed cooling centrifuge. The supernatant was recovered in an ultracentrifugation tube and ultracentrifuged (40,000 rpm, 60 min, 4°C) using an ultracentrifuge (Beckman, L-90K). To the obtained pellets was added a suspending buffer [50
20 mM Tris-HCl, 1 mM EDTA, Protease inhibitor Complete (Roche), pH 7.4], and the pellets were suspended by pipetting. The protein concentration of this suspension was measured, diluted to 2 mg/mL to give cell membrane fractions of CHO-hMelR7 and CHO-hMT2 cells. The membrane fractions were dispensed to 1.5 mL tubes
25 (Eppendorf, #0030120.086) by 100 µL, preserved in a freezer (-80°C) and used for a binding assay. Protein was quantified using BCA protein assay kit (Pierce) with BSA as the standard.

(4) Preparation of membrane fraction suspension

Immediately before use, the membrane fractions of CHO-
30 hMelR7 and CHO-hMT2 cells of the above-mentioned (3) were diluted 20-fold with assay buffer (50 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.7).

(5) Preparation of 2-[¹²⁵I] Iodomelatonin solution

2-[¹²⁵I] Iodomelatonin (#NEX236, PerkinElmer) was diluted with the assay buffer to 400 pM for MT₁ and 1 nM for MT₂.

(6) Binding reaction

The assay buffer (80 μ L) of the above-mentioned (4) was added to each well of a 96-well plate (type 3363, Corning). Then, a test compound (compound solution diluted with DMSO to 200-fold of the final measurement concentration) was added by 2 μ L. 2 μ L of DMSO was added to each well of the total binding control section, and 100 μ M cold Melatonin solution (Sigma, diluted with DMSO to 100 μ M) was added to each well of the nonspecific binding control section by 2 μ L. Then, the membrane fraction suspension (100 μ L) was added. 2-[¹²⁵I] Iodomelatonin solution of the above-mentioned (5) was added to each well mentioned above by 20 μ L, and a binding reaction was carried out at 25°C for 2.5 hr in a micromixer (TAITEC, Bioshaker M.BR-024).

(7) Measurement

Using a cell harvester (PerkinElmer), the binding reaction mixture in each well of the 96-well plate was transferred to a treated (immersed in 50 mM Tris, pH 7.7 in advance) filter plate (UniFilter GF/C, PerkinElmer) and filtered. After filtration, the plate was washed 4 times with the assay buffer, and dried in a dryer (42°C) for 2 hr or more. 25 μ L of a liquid scintillator (MicroScint O, PerkinElmer) was added to each well of the filter plate after drying, and the luminescence of scintillator was measured by TopCount (PerkinElmer) for 1 min.

Specific binding is a value obtained by subtracting nonspecific binding from the total binding. The binding inhibitory activity of the test compound is shown by the ratio of the value obtained by subtracting the measurement value when the test compound was added from the total binding, to the specific binding. The compound concentration (IC₅₀ value) showing 50% of binding inhibitory activity was calculated from the dose reaction curve. The results are shown in Table 1.

Table 1

Example compound	MT ₁ (IC ₅₀ , nM)	MT ₂ (IC ₅₀ , nM)
3	0.33	0.37
4	0.068	0.24
5	0.25	0.22
6	0.079	0.43
8	0.19	0.22
9	0.88	0.31
11	0.15	0.31
12	0.057	0.13
13	15	9.6
14	0.13	0.28
15	0.030	0.049
16	11	6.2
17	0.022	0.091
19	0.15	0.28
20	0.038	0.12
21	19	8.5
22	0.36	0.41
29	0.66	0.75
38	0.54	0.28
43	0.25	0.77
45	0.095	0.14

From the results of Table 1, it is known that compound (I) has superior melatonin receptor agonist activity.

5 Experimental Example 2

In vitro metabolic stability test

(1) Preparation of analysis sample

The necessary amounts of the analysis samples were prepared at the following composition ratio.

- 10 Test compound mixture: 0.1 mol/L phosphate buffer (pH 7.4) (41 μ L), control microsome (manufactured by Gentest, human lymphoblastoid cell-derived control microsome, 10 mg protein/mL) (8 μ L), and test compound 0.1 mM methanol solution (1 μ L).
 Microsome mixed solution: 0.1 mol/L phosphate buffer (pH 7.4) (9
 15 μ L), human liver microsome (manufactured by XENOTECH, H0610, 20 mg protein/mL) (1 μ L), and purified water (20 μ L).
 NADPH production system: 50 mmol/L β -NADP⁺ (200 μ L), 500 mmol/L Glucose-6-phosphate (200 μ L), 150 unit/mL Glucose-6-phosphate

dehydrogenase (200 μ L), 0.1 mol/L $MgCl_2$ (1 mL), and purified water (2.4 mL).

(2) Reaction test

Microsome mixed solution (30 μ L) and NADPH production system (20 μ L) were sequentially dispensed to each well of a 96 well plate (type 3371, Corning), and a test compound mixture (50 μ L) was added. Acetonitrile (100 μ L) was added before start of incubation at 37°C or 20 min later to give samples before and after incubation. These samples were centrifuged (3,000 rpm, 10 min), and the supernatant was dispensed to a 96 well plate by about 100 μ L and 2-fold diluted with purified water (100 μ L). 90 μ L thereof was analyzed by HPLC.

HPLC analysis conditions

Instrument: Shimadzu LC10vp

Column: CAPCELL PAK C18 MGII (4.6 $\times$ 75 mm, 3 μ m)

Mobile phase A: 10 mmol/L ammonium acetate:acetonitrile
=9:1

Mobile phase B: 10 mmol/L ammonium acetate:acetonitrile
=1:9

Flow rate: 1 mL/min

Column temperature: 40°C

Detection: UV (250 nm)

Gradient:

Time (min) Mobile phase B (%)

0	25
8.5	100
12.5	100
12.51	25
17	25 (termination)

(3) Data analysis and results

Elimination percentage was determined from the difference in the unchanged compound peak areas before and after the start of the reaction, normalized based on the reaction time and

microsome concentration, and the elimination rate (%/min/mg) was calculated. The results are shown in Table 2.

Table 2

Example compound	elimination rate (%/min/mg)
12	-0.3
15	2.6
19	2.4
20	2.7
38	2.6

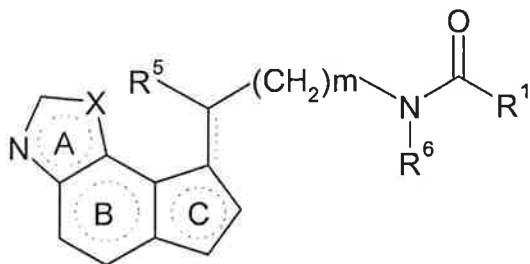
5

From the results of Table 2, it is known that compound (I) has superior metabolic stability.

This application is based on application No. 2006-168518
10 filed in Japan, the contents of which are incorporated hereinto by reference.

CLAIMS

1. A compound represented by the formula:



5 wherein

R^1 is

- (i) (a) C_{1-6} alkyl, (b) C_{2-6} alkenyl, (c) C_{2-6} alkynyl, (d) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl or (e) C_{6-14} aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
- 10 (ii) amino optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (a) C_{1-6} alkyl, (b) C_{2-6} alkenyl, (c) C_{2-6} alkynyl, (d) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl and (e) C_{6-14} aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
- (iii) (1) hydroxy, or (2) (a) C_{1-6} alkoxy, (b) C_{2-6} alkenyloxy,
- 15 (c) C_{2-6} alkynyloxy, (d) C_{3-6} cycloalkyloxy or (e) C_{6-14} aryloxy, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or
- (iv) a 5- to 14-membered heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds
- 20 selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group B;

R^5 is

- (i) a hydrogen atom,
- 25 (ii) a halogen atom,
- (iii) (a) C_{1-6} alkyl, (b) C_{2-6} alkenyl, (c) C_{2-6} alkynyl, (d) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl or (e) C_{6-14} aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,

- (iv) amino optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl and (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
- 5 (v) (1) hydroxy, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or
- (vi) (1) mercapto, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkylthio, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenylthio, (d) C₂₋₆ alkynylthio, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio or (e) C₆₋₁₄ arylthio, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A;
- 10 R⁶ is
- (i) a hydrogen atom or
- 15 (ii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A;
- X is an oxygen atom or a sulfur atom;
- m is 0, 1 or 2;
- 20 ring A is a 5-membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from
- (i) a halogen atom,
- (ii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to
- 25 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
- (iii) amino optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl and (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
- 30 (iv) (1) hydroxy, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,

(v) (1) mercapto, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkylthio, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenylthio, (d) C₂₋₆ alkynylthio, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio or (e) C₆₋₁₄ arylthio, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, and

5 (vi) a 5- to 14-membered heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group B;

10 ring B is a 6-membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from

(i) a halogen atom,

(ii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to

15 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,

(iii) amino optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl and (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,

20 (iv) (1) hydroxy, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,

(v) (1) mercapto, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkylthio, (b) C₂₋₆

25 alkenylthio, (d) C₂₋₆ alkynylthio, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio or (e) C₆₋₁₄ arylthio, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, and

(vi) a 5- to 14-membered heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds

30 selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group B;

ring C is a 5-membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from

- (i) a halogen atom,
- (ii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
- 5 (iii) (1) hydroxy, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, and
- (iv) a 5- to 14-membered heterocyclic group containing,
- 10 besides a carbon atom, 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group B; and
- shows a single bond or a double bond, or a salt thereof,
- 15 substituent group A:
- (1) halogen atom,
- (2) nitro,
- (3) cyano,
- (4) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected
- 20 from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally
- 25 halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,
- (5) C₆₋₁₀ aryl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆
- 30 alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,
- (6) hydroxy,

- (7) C₁₋₃ alkylenedioxy,
- (8) C₁₋₆ alkoxy optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,
- (9) C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,
- (10) formyloxy or C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,
- (11) C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbonyloxy optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,
- (12) carboxy,

- (13) formyl or C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,
- (14) C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbonyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,
- (15) C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,
- (16) C₇₋₁₂ aralkyloxy-carbonyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,
- (17) carbamoyl,
- (18) mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆

alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,

5 (19) di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,

10 (20) C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,

15 (21) amino,

(22) mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,

20 (23) di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,

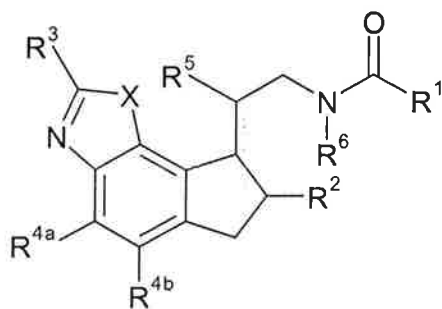
30

- (24) 3- to 6-membered cyclic amino optionally containing, besides a carbon atom and one nitrogen atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and oxo,
- (25) C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy and optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino,
- (26) oxo,
- (27) 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic group optionally containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy, amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonylamino and oxo,
- (28) mercapto,
- (29) C₁₋₆ alkylthio,
- (30) C₆₋₁₀ arylthio,
- (31) C₁₋₆ alkylsulfinyl,
- (32) C₆₋₁₀ arylsulfinyl,

- (33) C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl,
 - (34) C₆₋₁₀ arylsulfonyl,
 - (35) sulfamoyl,
 - (36) mono-C₁₋₆ alkylsulfamoyl, and
 - 5 (37) di-C₁₋₆ alkylsulfamoyl,
- substituent group B:
- (1) halogen atom,
 - (2) optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl,
 - (3) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl,
 - 10 (4) C₂₋₆ alkynyl,
 - (5) C₂₋₆ alkenyl,
 - (6) C₇₋₁₂ aralkyl,
 - (7) C₆₋₁₀ aryl,
 - (8) C₁₋₆ alkoxy,
 - 15 (9) C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy,
 - (10) formyl or C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl,
 - (11) C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbonyl,
 - (12) formyloxy or C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy,
 - (13) C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbonyloxy,
 - 20 (14) carboxy,
 - (15) C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl,
 - (16) C₇₋₁₂ aralkyloxy-carbonyl,
 - (17) carbamoyl,
 - (18) oxo,
 - 25 (19) amidino,
 - (20) imino,
 - (21) amino,
 - (22) mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino,
 - (23) di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino,
 - 30 (24) 3- to 6-membered cyclic amino optionally containing,
- besides a carbon atom and one nitrogen atom, 1 to 3 hetero atoms selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from a halogen atom, nitro, cyano, hydroxy, optionally

- halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkoxy,
 amino, mono-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino, carboxy, C₁₋₆
 alkyl-carbonyl, C₁₋₆ alkoxy-carbonyl, carbamoyl, mono-C₁₋₆ alkyl-
 carbamoyl, di-C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀ aryl-carbamoyl, C₆₋₁₀
 5 aryl, C₆₋₁₀ aryloxy, optionally halogenated C₁₋₆ alkyl-
 carbonylamino and oxo,
 (25) C₁₋₃ alkylenedioxy,
 (26) hydroxy,
 (27) nitro,
 10 (28) cyano,
 (29) mercapto,
 (30) sulfo,
 (31) sulfinio,
 (32) phosphono,
 15 (33) sulfamoyl,
 (34) mono-C₁₋₆ alkylsulfamoyl,
 (35) di-C₁₋₆ alkylsulfamoyl,
 (36) C₁₋₆ alkylthio,
 (37) C₆₋₁₀ arylthio,
 20 (38) C₁₋₆ alkylsulfinyl,
 (39) C₆₋₁₀ arylsulfinyl,
 (40) C₁₋₆ alkylsulfonyl, and
 (41) C₆₋₁₀ arylsulfonyl.

- 25 2. The compound of claim 1, which is represented by the
 formula:



wherein

R² is

(i) a hydrogen atom,
(ii) a halogen atom,
(iii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to
5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or
(iv) a 5- to 14-membered heterocyclic group containing,
besides a carbon atom, 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds
selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur
atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from
10 substituent group B;

R³ is

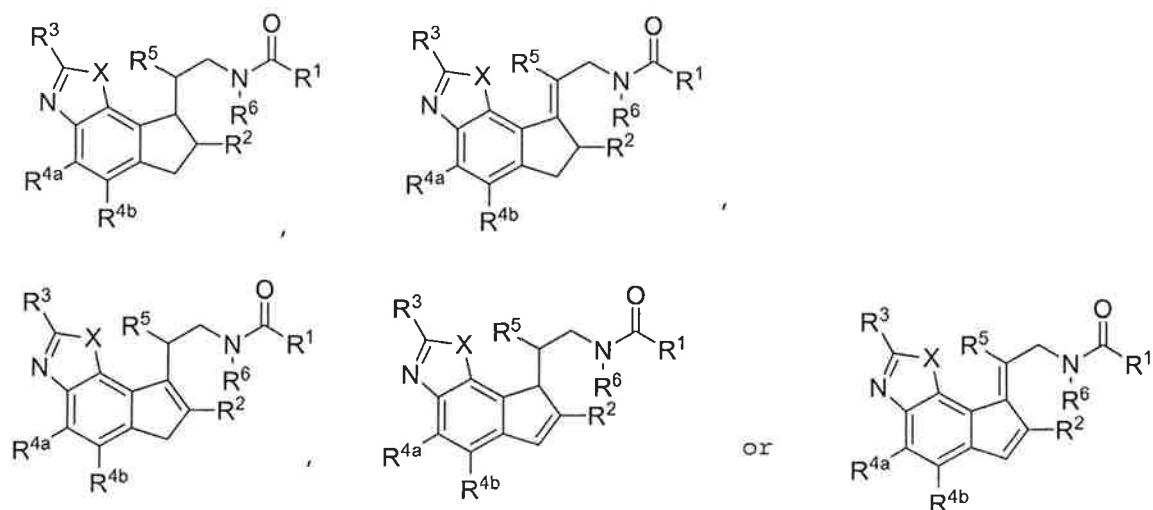
(i) a hydrogen atom,
(ii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to
15 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
(iii) amino optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected
from (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl and (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to
5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
20 (iv) (1) hydroxy, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy,
(c) C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy,
each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from
substituent group A,
(v) (1) mercapto, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkylthio, (b) C₂₋₆
25 alkenylthio, (d) C₂₋₆ alkynylthio, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio or (e)
C₆₋₁₄ arylthio, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents
selected from substituent group A, or
(vi) a 5- to 14-membered heterocyclic group containing,
besides a carbon atom, 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds
30 selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur
atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from
substituent group B;

R^{4a} and R^{4b} are the same or different and each is

(i) a hydrogen atom,

- (ii) a halogen atom,
- (iii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
- 5 (iv) amino optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl and (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
- 10 (v) (1) hydroxy, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or
- (vi) (1) mercapto, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkylthio, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenylthio, (d) C₂₋₆ alkynylthio, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio or (e) 15 C₆₋₁₄ arylthio, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A;
- and other symbols are as defined in claim 1.

3. The compound of claim 1 or 2, which is represented by the 20 formula:



wherein R², R³, R^{4a} and R^{4b} are as defined in claim 2, and other symbols are as defined in claim 1.

25 4. The compound of claim 1 or 2, wherein R¹ is

- (i) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
(ii) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or
5 (iii) C₂₋₆ alkenyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A.

5. The compound of claim 1 or 2, wherein R⁵ is a hydrogen atom or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected
10 from substituent group A.

6. The compound of claim 1 or 2, wherein R⁶ is a hydrogen atom or C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A.

15

7. The compound of claim 1, wherein m is 1.

8. The compound of claim 1, wherein ring A is a 5-membered ring optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from
20 (i) a halogen atom,
(ii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
(iii) amino optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected
25 from (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl and (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
(iv) (1) hydroxy, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy,
30 each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, and
(v) (1) mercapto, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkylthio, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenylthio, (d) C₂₋₆ alkynylthio, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkylthio or (e) C₆₋₁₄ arylthio, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents

selected from substituent group A.

9. The compound of claim 2, wherein R² is

- (i) a hydrogen atom,
- 5 (ii) (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or
- (iii) a 5- to 14-membered heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds
- 10 selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group B.

10. The compound of claim 2, wherein R³ is

- 15 (i) a hydrogen atom,
- (ii) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
- (iii) C₂₋₆ alkenyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or
- 20 (iv) amino optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyl, (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyl, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl and (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A.

25 11. The compound of claim 2, wherein R^{4a} and R^{4b} are the same or different and each is

- (i) a hydrogen atom,
- (ii) a halogen atom,
- (iii) (1) hydroxy, or (2) (a) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (b) C₂₋₆ alkenyloxy,
- 30 (c) C₂₋₆ alkynyloxy, (d) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyloxy or (e) C₆₋₁₄ aryloxy, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or
- (iv) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A.

12. The compound of claim 2, wherein R^1 is

- (i) C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,
- (ii) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents

5 selected from substituent group A, or

- (iii) C_{2-6} alkenyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A;

R^2 is

- (i) a hydrogen atom,

10 (ii) (a) C_{1-6} alkyl, (b) C_{2-6} alkenyl, (c) C_{2-6} alkynyl, (d) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl or (e) C_{6-14} aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or

- (iii) a 5- to 14-membered heterocyclic group containing, besides a carbon atom, 1 to 4 hetero atoms of one or two kinds

15 selected from a nitrogen atom, an oxygen atom and a sulfur atom, which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group B;

R^3 is

- (i) a hydrogen atom,

20 (ii) C_{1-6} alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A,

- (iii) C_{2-6} alkenyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or
- (iv) amino optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from

25 (a) C_{1-6} alkyl, (b) C_{2-6} alkenyl, (c) C_{2-6} alkynyl, (d) C_{3-6} cycloalkyl and (e) C_{6-14} aryl, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A;

R^{4a} and R^{4b} are the same or different and each is

- (i) a hydrogen atom,

30 (ii) a halogen atom,

- (iii) (1) hydroxy, or (2) (a) C_{1-6} alkoxy, (b) C_{2-6} alkenyloxy, (c) C_{2-6} alkynyloxy, (d) C_{3-6} cycloalkyloxy or (e) C_{6-14} aryloxy, each of which optionally has 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A, or

(iv) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A;

R⁵ is

(i) a hydrogen atom or

5 (ii) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A; and

R⁶ is

(i) a hydrogen atom or

(ii) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected
10 from substituent group A.

13. The compound of claim 2, wherein R¹ is C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A;

R² is a hydrogen atom;

15 R³ is

(i) a hydrogen atom or

(ii) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected from substituent group A;

R^{4a} and R^{4b} are the same or different and each is

20 (i) a hydrogen atom or

(ii) a halogen atom;

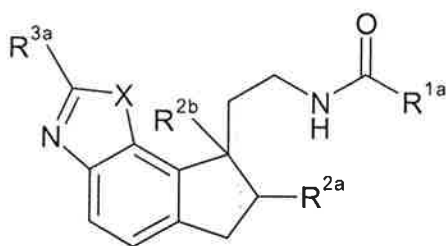
R⁵ is

(i) a hydrogen atom or

(ii) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 5 substituents selected
25 from substituent group A; and

R⁶ is a hydrogen atom.

14. The compound of claim 1, which is represented by the formula:



wherein

R^{1a} is (a) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyloxy, hydroxy and a halogen atom, (b) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, (c) phenyl or (d) mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino;

R^{2a} is a hydrogen atom or C₁₋₆ alkyl;

R^{2b} is a hydrogen atom or hydroxy;

R^{3a} is (a) a hydrogen atom, (b) C₁₋₆ alkyl optionally having 1 to 3 substituents selected from phenyl, hydroxy, a halogen atom,

C₁₋₆ alkyl-carbonyl, C₇₋₁₃ aralkyloxy and pyridyl, (c) C₃₋₆ cycloalkyl, (d) phenyl, (e) C₁₋₆ alkoxy, (f) mercapto, (g) C₁₋₆ alkylthio or (h) mono- or di-C₁₋₆ alkylamino.

15

15. N-[2-(2-Methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide,

N-[2-(2-methyl-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

20 N-[2-(2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]propionamide,

N-{2-[2-(4-phenylbutyl)-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-ylidene]ethyl}acetamide,

25 N-[2-(2-methyl-6,7-dihydro-8H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-ylidene)ethyl]acetamide,

N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

(R)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,

(S)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,
N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide,
5 (R)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide,
(S)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide,
N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,
10 (R)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,
(S)-N-[2-(2-methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,
15 N-[2-(2-ethyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,
(R)-N-[2-(2-ethyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,
(S)-N-[2-(2-ethyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,
20 N-[2-(2-methoxy-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,
(R)-N-[2-(2-methoxy-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide,
25 (S)-N-[2-(2-methoxy-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide, or a salt thereof.

16. (S)-N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide, or a salt thereof.

30

17. (S)-N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]propionamide, or a salt thereof.

18. N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide, or a salt thereof.

19. (S)-N-[2-(2-Methyl-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]thiazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide, or a salt thereof.

20. N-[2-(2-Methoxy-7,8-dihydro-6H-indeno[5,4-d][1,3]oxazol-8-yl)ethyl]acetamide, or a salt thereof.

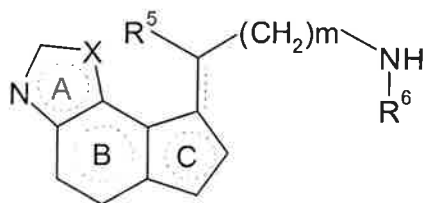
21. A pharmaceutical composition comprising the compound of any one of claims 1 to 20 and a pharmacologically acceptable carrier.

22. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 21, which is a melatonin receptor agonist.

23. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 21, which is an agent for the prophylaxis or treatment of sleep disorder.

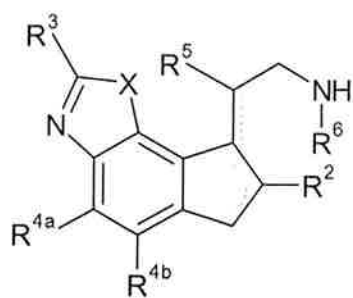
24. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 21, which is an agent for the prophylaxis or treatment of depression, anxiety or bipolar disorder.

25. A compound represented by the formula:



wherein each symbol is as defined in claim 1, or a salt thereof.

26. The compound of claim 25, which is represented by the formula:



wherein R^2 , R^3 , R^{4a} and R^{4b} are as defined in claim 2, and other symbols are as defined in claim 1.

SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> Takeda Pharmaceutical Company Limited

<120> Tricyclic compound and pharmaceutical use thereof

<130> 091062

<150> JP 2006-168518

<151> 2006-06-19

<160> 2

<170> PatentIn version 3.3

<210> 1

<211> 1053

<212> DNA

<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 1

atgcaggggca acggcagcgc gctgcccaac gcctcccagc ccgtgctccg cggggacggc	60
gcgcggccct cgtggctggc gtccgccctg gcctgcgtcc tcattcttcac catcgtgggtg	120
gacatcctgg gcaacctcct ggtcatcctg tcggtgtatc ggaacaagaa gctcaggaac	180
gcaggaaaca tctttgtggt gagcttagcg gtggcagacc tgggtggtggc catttatccg	240
taccggttgg tgctgatgtc gatatttaac aacgggtgga acctgggcta totgcactgc	300
caagtcagtg ggttcctgat gggcctgagc gtcacgggt ccatattcaa catcaccggc	360
atcgccatca accgctactg ctacatctgc cacagtctca agtaagacaa actgtacagc	420
agcaagaact ccctctgcta cgtgctcctc atatggctcc tgacgctggc ggccgtcctg	480

cccaacctcc gtgcagggac tctccagtac gaccgcagga tctactcgtg caccttcgcc	540
cagtcogtca gctccgccta caccatcgcc gtggtggttt tccacttcct cgtcccatg	600
atcatagtca tcttctgtta cctgagaata tggatcctgg ttctccaggt cagacagagg	660
gtgaaacctg accgcaaacc caaactgaaa ccacaggact tcaggaattt tgtcaccatg	720
tttgtggttt ttgtcctttt tgccatttgc tgggctcctc tgaacttcac tggcctggcc	780
gtggcctctg accccgccag catggtgcct aggatcccag agtggctggt tgtggccagt	840
tactacatgg cgtatttcaa cagctgcctc aatgccatta tatacgggct actgaaccaa	900
aatttcagga aggaatacag gagaattata gtctcgctct gtacagccag ggtgttcttt	960
gtggacagct ctaacgacgt ggccgatagg gttaaattga aaccgtctcc actgatgacc	1020
aacaataatg tagtaaaggt ggactccggt taa	1053

<210> 2

<211> 1089

<212> DNA

<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 2

atgtcagaga acggctcctt cgccaactgc tgcgaggcgg gcgggtgggc agtgcgccc	60
ggctggtcgg gggctggcag cgcgcggccc tccaggaccc ctgcacctcc ctgggtggct	120
ccagcgctgt ccgcggtgct catcgtcacc accgccgtgg acgtcgtggg caacctcctg	180
gtgatcctct ccgtgctcag gaaccgcaag ctccggaacg caggtaattt gttcttggtg	240

agtctggcat tggctgacct ggtggtggcc ttctaccct acccgctaat cctcgtggcc	300
atcttctatg acggctgggc cctgggggag gagcactgca aggccagcgc ctttgtgatg	360
ggcctgagcg tcatcggtc tgtcttcaat atcactgcca tcgccattaa ccgctactgc	420
tacatctgcc acagcatggc ctaccaccga atctaccggc gctggcacac ccctctgcac	480
atctgcctca tctggctcct caccgtggtg gccttgctgc ccaacttctt tgtgggggtcc	540
ctggagtacg acccagcat ctattcctgc accttcaccc agaccgccag caccagtac	600
acggcggcag tgggtggtcat ccacttcctc ctccctatcg ctgtcgtgtc cttctgctac	660
ctgcgcattc ggggtgctggg gcttcaggcc cgcaggaaag ccaagccaga gagcaggctg	720
tgcctgaagc ccagcgactt gcggagcttt ctaaccatgt ttgtggtggt tgtgatcttt	780
gccatctgct gggctccact taactgcac ggccctcgtg tggccatcaa cccccaagaa	840
atggctcccc agatccctga ggggctatct gtcactagct acttactggc ttatttcaac	900
agctgcctga atgccattgt ctatgggctc ttgaaccaa acttccgcag ggaatacaag	960
aggatcctct tggccctttg gaaccacgg cactgcattc aagatgcttc caagggcagc	1020
cacgoggagg ggctgcagag cccagctcca cccatcattg gtgtgcagca ccaggcagat	1080
gctctctag	1089